This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Latin and Greek Class-Books

PUBLISHED BY

OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH;

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO., LONDON.

EDINBURGH ACADEMY CLASS-BOOKS.

The acknowledged merit of these schoolbooks, and the high reputation of the seminary from which they emanate, almost supersede the necessity of any recommendation. The "Latin" and "Greek Rudiments" form an introduction to these languages at once simple, perspicuous, and comprehensive. The "Latin Rudiments" contain an *Appendix*, which renders the use of a separate work on Grammar quite unnecessary; and the *list of anomalous verbs* in the "Greek Rudiments" is believed to be more extensive and complete than any that has yet appeared in School Grammars of the language. In the "Latin Delectus" and "Greek Extracts" the sentences have been arranged strictly on the *progressive principle*, increasing in difficulty with the advancement of the Pupil's knowledge; while the *Vocabularies* contain an explanation, not only of every *word*, but also of every *difficult expression* which is found in the works,—thus rendering the acquisition of the Latin and Greek languages both easy and agreeable. The Selections from Cicero embrace the portions of his works which are best adapted for Scholastic tuition.

1. RUDIMENTS OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. 12mo, price 2s. bound. 22d Edition.
2. LATIN DELECTUS, with a Vocabulary explaining every word and every difficult expression in the Text. 12mo, 3s. bound. 16th Edition.
3. RUDIMENTS OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound. 12th Edition.
4. GREEK EXTRACTS, with a Vocabulary explaining every word and the more difficult passages in the Text, and an Analytical Index. 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound. 10th Edition.
5. SELECTIONS FROM CICERO: Comprising Seven Orations and nearly fifty pages of Letters. 18mo, 339 pages, price 3s. bound. 4th Edition.
6. SELECTA E POETIS LATINIS. 12mo, price 3s. bound.
7. EDINBURGH ACADEMY MODERN GEOGRAPHY. 12mo, price 2s. 6d. bound. 10th Edition, *Revised. With an Index.*
8. EDINBURGH ACADEMY ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. 12mo, price 3s. bound. 7th Edition.

Published by Oliver and Boyd.

LATIN ELEMENTARY WORKS AND CLASSICS,

EDITED BY GEO. FERGUSON, LL.D.,

Lately Professor of Humanity in King's College and University of Aberdeen, and formerly one of the Masters of the Edinburgh Academy.

1. FERGUSON'S GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES, with Notes and a Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text. 18mo, 2s. bound. 19th Edition.—A *Key*, 18mo, price 2s. bound.

2. FERGUSON'S INTRODUCTORY LATIN DELECTUS, with a Vocabulary explaining every word and every difficult expression in the Text. 12mo, price 2s. bound. 9th Edition.

3. FERGUSON'S OVID'S METAMORPHOSES. 18mo, 326 pages, price 2s. 6d. bound. 13th Edition.

There are explanatory notes on each page, and an index containing mythological, geographical and historical illustrations.

4. FERGUSON'S CICERONIS ORATIONES SELECTAE: pro Lege Manilia, IV. in Catilinam, pro A. L. Archia, pro T. A. Milone. Ex Orellii recensione. 18mo, 1s. 6d. bound. 6th Edition.

5. FERGUSON'S CICERONIS CATO MAJOR sive de Senectute, Laelius sive de Amicitia, Somnium Scipionis, et Epistolae Selectae. Ex Orellii recensione. 1s. 6d. bound. *Stereotyped.*

6. FERGUSON'S CICERONIS de OFFICIIS. 1s. 6d. bound.

LECTIONES SELECTÆ; or, Select Latin Lessons in Morality, History, and Biography: for the use of Beginners. With a Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text. By C. MELVILLE, late of the Grammar School, Kirkcaldy. 10th Edition, 1s. 6d. bound.

CÆSAR; with Notes, Map, Memoir, and a Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text. By W. M'DOWALL, late Inspector of the Heriot Foundation Schools, Edinburgh. 3s. New Edition.

M'DOWALL'S VIRGIL; with Notes, Memoir, and a Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text. 12mo, 3s. bound.

DYMOCK'S CÆSAR; with illustrative Notes, a Historical and Geographical Index, and a Map. 4s. bound. 21st Edition.

DYMOCK'S SALLUST. 18mo, 330 pages, **Reduced to 2s.** bd. 14th Edition.

This edition is accompanied by explanatory foot-notes and a very copious historical and geographical index, extending to 156 pages.

[*Continued at end of Book.*

ELEMENTARY GEOGRAPHY.

BY

JAMES CLYDE, LL.D.,

ONE OF THE CLASSICAL MASTERS IN THE EDINBURGH ACADEMY; AUTHOR OF "SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY," ETC. ETC.

NINTH EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED THROUGHOUT.

EDINBURGH:
OLIVER AND BOYD, TWEEDDALE COURT.
LONDON: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.
1864.

Price One Shilling and Sixpence.

2017. f. 135.

BODLEIAN LIBRARY
MAY 1 86
OXFORD.

Now ready,

Eighth Edition, price 4s., Revised and Corrected throughout, of

DR CLYDE'S SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY.

WITH SPECIAL CHAPTERS ON MATHEMATICAL AND PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY, AND TECHNOLOGICAL APPENDIX.

Second Edition, price 4s.

DR CLYDE'S GREEK SYNTAX.

WITH A RATIONALE OF THE CONSTRUCTIONS.

With Prefatory Notice by John S. Blackie, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh.

EDINBURGH:
PRINTED BY OLIVER AND BOYD,
TWEEDDALE COURT.

PREFACE.

THE present Manual is so far an abridgment of the author's larger work on the same subject, that almost every paragraph in the former admits of being amplified and elucidated by reference to the latter. As good teaching presupposes, among other things, thorough knowledge of the subject, the teacher, who uses this Manual in his class, is recommended to use the other in his study. If, in examining on the printed matter of this Manual, he occasionally add a remark borrowed from the larger work, he will be rewarded by finding that these *vivâ voce* interpolations are remembered often more accurately, and for a longer time, than the printed lesson.

The following pages are not, however, a mere abridgment of the author's larger work. The present Manual is intended for less advanced pupils. Accordingly, it is marked throughout by greater simplicity of style; it condescends, in the introductory chapters, to explanations of the most elementary geographical terms and conceptions; the textual matter generally, and the topographical details in particular, of the larger work, are not only abridged, but presented, as far as convenient, in a tabular form; numerous references have been interspersed, for the purpose of enforcing attention to analogous facts in different countries, or to the recurrence in particular instances of one and the same law; and the questions for self-examination have been enlarged to an extent that will render them an effectual means of preparation for the class. In thus adapting his materials to the humbler uses of an elementary class, the author has endeavoured to reproduce that life-like grouping of facts—geographical portraiture, as it may be called—which has been remarked with approbation in his larger work.

The questions for self-examination are intentionally not quite exhaustive of the text. Teachers will avail themselves of this circumstance to train their pupils to attentive reading, by asking them questions on the text besides those printed below. To stimulate thought, the author has inserted here and there a question not founded directly on the text, yet such that the answer can be obtained from the text by an easy deduction; and, for the purpose of enforcing reference to a map, he has inserted many questions which cannot otherwise be answered at all.

The area and population of each country have been stated, when they exceed those of the United Kingdom, in terms of the area and population of the British Isles; and, when they fall short of those of the United Kingdom, in terms of the area and population of England, Scotland, or Ireland, as was found most convenient. Teachers are entreated not to require from their pupils a knowledge of the absolute area and population of foreign countries. Daily to compare the area and population of foreign countries with those of our own, will be found the most interesting and effectual way of producing permanent and sufficiently accurate impressions. Here, as everywhere else in teaching, to attempt everything is to achieve nothing.

26th May 1860.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE
Definition of the Subject, ... 1
Mathematical Geography, ... 1
Physical Geography, ... 6
Political Geography, ... 8
The World, ... 9
Climate, ... 12
The Old World, or Eastern Hemisphere, . . . 17

EUROPE, ... 20
Detached Countries—
British Isles, ... 25
England and Wales, ... 26
Scotland, ... 38
Ireland, ... 45
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, . 50
British Empire, ... 51
British Possessions in Europe, . . . 52
Scandinavia, or Sweden and Norway, . . . 53

Countries in the Great Plain—
Russia, ... 56
Prussia, ... 60
Denmark, ... 62
Holland, ... 64

Countries divided between the Great Plain and the Mountainous Region—
Belgium, ... 66
Germany, ... 68

Countries in the Mountainous Region—
Austria, ... 70
France, ... 74

PAGE
Iberian Peninsula, or Spain and Portugal, . . 79
Switzerland, ... 84
Italy, ... 85
Greece, ... 89
Turkey in Europe, ... 90

Table of Towns situated on European Rivers, . . 93

ASIA, ... 95
Siberia, or Russia in Asia, ... 99
Turkestan, or Independent Tartary, . . . 100
Transcaucasia, ... 101
Turkey in Asia, ... 101
Arabia, ... 105
Persia, ... 106
Affghanistan, ... 107
Beloochistan, ... 108
Hindustan, ... 108
South-Eastern Peninsula, ... 113
China, ... 115
Japan, ... 117

AFRICA, ... 119
Valley of the Nile. 122
Barbary States, ... 124
Foreign Possessions, ... 125
Islands, ... 125

AMERICA, ... 126
Greenland, or Danish America, . . . 130
Russian America, ... 130
British North America, ... 131
United States, ... 133
Mexico, ... 137
Central America, ... 138
South America, ... 138
New Granada, ... 140
Ecuador, ... 140
Venezuela, ... 141
Guiana, ... 141
Brazil, ... 142
Peru, ... 144

PAGE
Bolivia, ... 144
Chili, ... 145
La Plata, or Argentine Republic, . . 145
Paraguay, ... 146
Uruguay, ... 146
Patagonia, ... 147
Islands, ... 147

OCEANIA, ... 150
Malaysia, ... 150
Australasia, ... 151
Polynesia, ... 154

POSTSCRIPT TO THE NINTH EDITION.

Early in 1861, six of the Slave States of the American Union declared their independence under the name of "Confederate States." The other Slave States, excepting Delaware, Maryland, and part of Missouri, joined this new confederation; and after some time Richmond, the capital of Virginia, became its seat of Government. Civil war accordingly broke out between North and South—the Federals and the Confederates. Thanks to their naval superiority, the Federals hold New Orleans, command the whole course of the Mississippi, and blockade the entire sea-board of the Confederate States; but the operations of war have not materially altered the positions of the contending parties in the frontier territory. Notwithstanding repeated failures, the Federals still persevere in attempting to take Richmond, the Confederate capital, and Charleston, which took the lead in breaking up the Union.

ELEMENTARY GEOGRAPHY.

DEFINITION OF THE SUBJECT.

1. *Geography* is a word of Greek origin, meaning *description of the earth.* All inquiries into the figure, size, and motions of the earth belong to *mathematical* geography. *Physical* geography is a description of the earth's surface as made by God; *political* geography is a description of the earth's surface as parcelled out by man.

MATHEMATICAL GEOGRAPHY.

N.B.—*This chapter cannot be taught without a globe.*

2. FORM OF THE EARTH.—In respect of form, the earth is an *oblate spheroid*—a *spheroid*, because nearly a sphere or perfectly round ball, and an *oblate* spheroid, because it differs from the perfect sphere by being *flattened* at two opposite points called *poles;* the intermediate mass bulges somewhat outwards. A *prolate* spheroid differs from the perfect sphere by being *prolonged* at two opposite points. A lemon and an egg are *prolate* spheroids: an orange is an *oblate* spheroid, like the earth. The form of the earth is represented by a globe.

3. GREAT AND SMALL CIRCLES.—For convenience' sake, and chiefly for the purpose of marking exactly the position of places on the earth's surface (sect. 7), circles are traced on the globe. The circle which runs round the globe where it bulges out most, is called the *equator*, because it divides the globe into two equal parts, called *hemispheres*, i.e., *half-spheres.* These hemispheres are distinguished as northern and southern; so

---

Questions for self-examination on the text, 1.—1. What does the word *geography* mean? 2. What subjects belong to *mathematical* geography? 3. What is the difference between *physical* and *political* geography?

2.—1. What is a *spheroid*? 2. What is the difference between an *oblate* and a *prolate* spheroid? 3. Mention two natural objects representing these figures respectively. 4. Which of them represents the figure of the earth? 5. Where are the poles situated?

also are the poles (sect. 2). The equator, and all circles passing through both poles, are great circles; the circles parallel to the equator, and thence called *parallels*, which diminish as they recede from it towards the poles, are *small* circles. All great circles divide the globe into two hemispheres.

4. CIRCLES, HOW DIVIDED.—All circles whatsoever are divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees;* degrees again are subdivided into sixty equal parts called *minutes;* and minutes into sixty equal parts called *seconds*. The length of a degree depends of course on the size of the circle (sect. 8). A degree on the equator measures fully, and one on any other great circle measures nearly sixty-nine miles. A *quadrant, i.e.,* quarter of a circle, is the measure of a *right* angle, which is accordingly called an angle of ninety degrees, written thus, 90°.

5. SIZE OF THE EARTH.—The earth is nearly fifty times larger than the moon, and one and a half million times smaller than the sun. The equator, 24,897 miles in circuit, is the earth's greatest *circumference,* i.e., *measure round.* A straight line passing through the centre of the earth to two opposite points in the equator, is the earth's longest *diameter,* i.e., *measure through;* and a straight line passing through the centre of the earth to the two poles, is the earth's shortest diameter. The former measures 7925 miles, and the latter, 7899 miles, which gives a difference of twenty-six miles. Hence the centre of the earth is thirteen miles farther from any point in the equator than from either pole. The *mean, i.e.,* average diameter of the earth measures 7912 miles, which gives 24,856 miles for the mean circumference.

6. ROTATION OF THE EARTH.—The earth turns round upon its shortest diameter (sect. 5) once in twenty-four hours. On this account its shortest diameter is called the earth's *axis,* a Latin word meaning *axle-tree.* This turning round, or *rotation* of the

---

3.—1. What is the *equator?* 2. Why is it called equator? 3. How are the poles distinguished from each other? 4. What circles are called *great* and *small* respectively?

4.—1. Why does the length of a degree on any circle depend on the size of that circle? 2. What is the greatest possible length of a degree? 3. On what circles will the degree fall short of the greatest length? 4. What is a right angle?

5.—1. What is the meaning of *circumference,* of *diameter,* and of *mean* diameter? 2. Why should the equator be the earth's greatest circumference? 3. Why should the distance, in a straight line, from pole to pole, be the earth's shortest diameter? 4. State in miles the earth's longest, shortest, and mean diameters? 5. State in miles the earth's greatest and mean circumference? 6. Compare the bulk of the earth with that of the sun and moon respectively.

earth on its axis once in twenty-four hours is the cause of day and night, and of the difference of time at places situated east and west of each other. A distance of 15° on the equator, or any of the parallels, corresponds to an hour of time. The rotation of the earth goes on from west to east, which is the very reason why the sun appears to make his circuit from east to west. Of any two places, that one has the earliest time which is situated east of the other. In the course of the earth's daily rotation, great circles passing through both poles come successively in halves at a time opposite the sun. The moment at which any of these great circles comes opposite the sun, is the moment of mid-day at all places in the half turned towards the sun, and of midnight at all places in the half turned away from it. Accordingly, such circles are called *meridians*, from the Latin word *meridies*, which means *mid-day*.

7. LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.—Parallels (sect. 3) are named according to their distance north or south from the equator; and meridians (sect. 6), according to their distance, east or west, from the meridian which passes through the Royal Observatory of Greenwich, near London. The meridian of Greenwich is for this reason called the *first* meridian. Any spot whatever must be in the equator, or some parallel, and at the same time in some quadrant of a meridian; but, these being at right angles to each other, any spot which is in both must be in their point of intersection. Hence to determine the exact position of any spot, all that is necessary is to state what parallel passes through it, *i.e.*, how far in degrees, &c. (sect. 4), it is situated north or south of the equator; and then what meridian passes through it, *i.e.*, how far in degrees, &c., it is situated east or west of the first meridian. The former of these measurements, which determines the distance of a place north or south from the equator, is called *latitude;* and the latter, which determines the distance of a place, east or west, from the first meridian, is called *longitude.*

6.—1. What straight line is called the earth's *axis?* and why? 2. In which of the two islands, Great Britain and Ireland, does day dawn soonest? and why? 3. What makes the sun appear to move from east to west? What is a *meridian?* and why is it so called? When it is mid-day at any point in a meridian, what o'clock is it at the opposite point in the same meridian?

7.—1. Show, on the globe, how two half-circles, at right angles to each other, determine the position of any point known to be in both. 2. Why is the meridian of Greenwich called the *first?* 3. What is *latitude?* 4. What is *longitude?*

8. **MEASUREMENT OF LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.**—Latitude cannot exceed 90°, and is measured, on the globe, along the brazen meridian. Longitude cannot exceed 180°; it may be measured on the equator, or on any of the parallels, but on the globe it is most conveniently measured on the equator with the aid of the brazen meridian. A degree of latitude is always equal to sixty-nine miles, because it is always measured on a great circle (sect. 4). A degree of longitude is equal to sixty-nine miles only in respect of places situated on the equator. For all others it is less. For those situated on the parallel of Greenwich, it is about forty-three miles long.

9. **ANNUAL REVOLUTION OF THE EARTH.**—Independently of the earth's daily rotation on its own axis, it goes once a year round the sun. This is called the earth's *annual revolution*, and causes the change of the seasons. In going round the sun, the earth's axis (sect. 6) is inclined 23½ degrees, nearly the quarter of a right angle (sect. 4), off the perpendicular. This inclination can be shown best on a globe with a wooden horizon, by making the north pole dip 23½ degrees. Let the globe then be turned round, and it will appear that the sun is not always *vertical to*, i.e., *directly over* the equator, but that he is, the whole year through, vertical to some point or other in another great circle called the *ecliptic*, which is seen to coincide with the wooden horizon. The ecliptic, therefore, represents the sun's apparent path over the earth.

10. **EQUINOXES AND SOLSTICES.**—The ecliptic crosses the equator twice, which means that, twice a year, the sun is vertical to the equator. On these occasions, which recur about the 22d March and the 22d September, day and night are of equal length over the whole earth; they are therefore called respectively the *vernal, i.e.*, spring *equinox*, and the *autumnal equinox*. Two points in the ecliptic are 23½ degrees distant from the equator, one of them towards the north pole, the other towards

---

8.—1. What is the greatest latitude and the greatest longitude that any place can have? 2. What places have no latitude? 3. What places have no longitude? 4. What are the only two spots which have 90° of latitude? 5. Why are all degrees of latitude of the same length? 6. Why are all degrees of longitude not of the same length? 7. About how many miles do degrees of longitude measure at the equator, and at the parallel of Greenwich respectively?

9.—1. Incline the globe so as to show in what posture the earth goes round the sun. 2. What is the *ecliptic*? 3. What is meant by the sun being *vertical* to any spot? 4. Within what limits are all places situated to which the sun is ever vertical?

the south pole. This means that, twice a year, the sun is vertical to places situated 23½ degeees distant from the equator, that distance being measured once towards the north pole, and once towards the south pole. On the former of these occasions, which recurs about the 22d June, the northern hemisphere, in which we live, has its midsummer and its longest day; on the other, which recurs about the 22d December, the northern hemisphere has its midwinter and its shortest day. The sun appears to rise and set at the very same hour, and over the very same points in the horizon, for several days about the 22d June and 22d December; these are accordingly the respective dates of the summer *solstice* and winter *solstice*, i.e., *standing still of the sun.*

11. TROPICS AND POLAR CIRCLES.—The small circles which touch the ecliptic (sect. 9) are called *tropics*, i.e., *turners*, because the sun, on becoming vertical to either of them, *turns* towards the other. The tropic 23½ degrees north of the equator is called the tropic of *Cancer;* and the tropic 23½ degrees south of the equator is called the tropic of Capricorn. The parallels (sect. 3) situated 23½ degrees from either pole are called *polar* circles; they are distinguished as the *Arctic* circle adjacent to the north pole, and the *Antarctic* circle adjacent to the south pole. At our summer solstice, the light of the sun extends not only to the north pole, but 23½ degrees beyond it; there is then no night within the Arctic circle. At our winter solstice the light of the sun reaches no nearer to the north pole than the Arctic circle, within which there is then no day. At the poles themselves the year is divided between a day and a night, each six months long. Places on the equator are the only ones which have day and night equal throughout the year.

12. ZONES OF THE EARTH.—The tropics and the polar circles

10.—1. Give the dates of the two *equinoxes*, and of the two *solstices*. 2. Explain the names *equinox* and *solstice*. 3. When is the sun most nearly vertical to the inhabitants of Great Britain? 4. Why have we only one longest and one shortest day in the year, whereas twice a year our days and nights are of equal length? 5. Calculate in miles (sect. 18) the distance from the equator of the places farthest north or farthest south to which the sun is annually vertical.

11.—1. Name the four small circles, two of which are distant 23½ degrees from the equator, and other two 23½ degrees from one or other of the two poles. 2. Why are the *tropics* so called? 3. State the phenomena of light at the poles, and at the equator respectively.

(sect. 11) divide the earth into five *zones*, *i.e.*, belts. These are the *torrid* zone between the tropics, the two *frigid* zones within the polar circles, and the two *temperate* zones lying on either side of the torrid zone, the north temperate towards the north frigid zone, and the south temperate towards the south frigid zone. The zones are named according to the temperature which prevails in each. It must not be supposed, however, that in the *torrid*, i.e., *roasting* zone, there are no cold regions. There, as here, the temperature diminishes with the elevation (sect. 23), and at the equator itself snow is perpetual at a height of 16,000 feet. Neither must it be supposed that, in the *frigid* i.e., *cold* zone, there is no heat; in consequence of the long days, and, for a short time, the constant day (sect. 11) of the Arctic summer, the heat becomes strong enough to bring out mosquitoes and other insects, which would soon perish in the summer of our temperate climate (sect. 22). Rain, being just the return to the earth of what the sun has evaporated from its surface, is most abundant in the torrid zone, and diminishes in quantity towards the poles. In the torrid zone the rains are periodical, and follow the course of the sun; and there it never rains but it pours. In the temperate zones the rains occur at all seasons, and are never so heavy as in the torrid zone. In the frigid zones, snow takes the place of rain.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

13. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES OF LAND.—The earth's surface consists of land and water, and all land is surrounded by water. The land is divided into *continents* and *islands*. The larger masses of land are called *continents*; the smaller ones, which are easily seen to be surrounded by water, are called *islands*. Sometimes the same mass of land goes by both names. Thus Australia is called an *island*, in relation to the far greater mass of Europe, Asia, and Africa united; but, in relation to the smaller mass of Van Diemen's Land beside it, we speak of the Australian *continent*.

12.—1. What is a *zone*? 2. Point out the five zones on the globe. 3. What places in the torrid zone are cold? 4. What causes the great heat of the short polar summer? 5. Why should there be most rain where there is most heat? 6. In what two respects do the tropical rains differ from ours?

13.—1. How comes it to pass that Australia is called sometimes an *island*, and

The interior of the land is divided into *mountains, hills, valleys*, and *plains*. Hills are lower than mountains. Plains are not always on low ground; they occur also on the sides, and even along the tops of mountain-ranges: in the former case they are called *terraces*, and in the latter *table-lands* or *plateaux*.

The land along the shore is divided into *capes, peninsulas*, and *isthmuses*.

Cape is a word of Latin origin, meaning *head*, and denotes a point of land running out into the water: thus we say *Cape* Horn and St. Bee's *Head*.

Peninsula is a Latin word, meaning *almost an island*, and denotes a portion of land almost surrounded by water. Africa is one great peninsula.

Isthmus is a Greek word denoting a narrow neck of land between two seas, which unite two larger masses of land: thus the narrow neck of land between the Mediterranean and the Red Sea, uniting Asia and Africa, is called the *Isthmus* of Suez.

14. GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES OF WATER.—The water of the earth is divided into *oceans, seas, gulfs* or *bays, straits, lakes*, and *rivers*.

A *gulf* or *bay* is a body of water running into the land, as the Gulf of Mexico, the Bay of Biscay.

A *strait* is a narrow channel flowing between two masses of land, and uniting two larger bodies of water: thus the Straits of Gibraltar, between Europe and Africa, unite the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean.

A *lake* is water wholly surrounded by land; some lakes have no outlet, as the Great Salt Lake in America, but most lakes both receive and give off water by means of rivers.

A *sea* is a large body of water nearly surrounded by land, as the Baltic Sea. The Dead Sea and the Sea of Galilee, the Caspian Sea and the Sea of Aral, are really lakes.

An *ocean* is a still larger body of water, which can more properly be said to encompass the adjacent land, than to be encompassed by it, as the Atlantic Ocean. All the oceans of the world communicate with one another, and are sometimes called collectively *the ocean*.

The waters of the ocean are subject to *tides*, *i.e.*, periodical swells, which recur twice in the course of twenty-four hours fifty

---

sometimes a *continent*? 2. What sort of a plain is a *plateau*? 3. What is a *cape*, a *peninsula*, and an *isthmus*? 4. Give examples of each.

minutes, the tides of any day being about fifty minutes later than those of the day preceding. In inland seas, like the Mediterranean, the tides are scarcely perceptible, and in lakes not at all.

POLITICAL GEOGRAPHY.

15. The earth is divided into *empires*, *kingdoms*, *republics*, and *colonies*. Generally an *empire* is larger than a *kingdom*: thus the United *Kingdom* of Great Britain and Ireland is only a part of the greater whole called the British *Empire* (sect. 64). Properly, however, the head of an empire is an emperor or empress, as the head of a kingdom is a king or queen. Both are *monarchies*, because in both there is one permanent chief ruler, who is also, for the most part, hereditary. Every monarch is either *limited* or *absolute*; *limited*, when the chief ruler is himself subject to law; and *absolute*, when he knows no law but his own will. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, and the Empire of Brazil, are both limited monarchies. The kingdom of France before the Revolution (1789) was an absolute monarchy, as the Russian empire is still. In *republics* the chief ruler is not permanent, but chosen for a limited term of years, more or less directly by the people whom he is to govern. The largest existing republic is the United States of America. They constitute a *federal* republic, because, whilst each state manages its own affairs independently, the interests common to them all are guarded by a general, also called *federal* government. *Constitutional* states are those, whether monarchical or republican, in which the power of making laws and voting supplies is held to a greater or less extent by representatives of the people. *Colonies* are dependent countries in the course of being settled by the inhabitants of some older country, called the *mother* country, on which they are dependent: thus Australia and New Zealand are colonies of Great Britain.

14.—1. Why is the Mediterranean called a *sea*, and the Atlantic an *ocean*? 2. What is a bay, a strait, a lake? 3. Give an example of each. 4. Mention four lakes improperly called seas.

15.—1. What is a monarchy? 2. When is a monarchy called *limited*? 3. When is a monarchy called *absolute*? 4. Name two empires, one of which is a limited monarchy, and the other an absolute one. 5. When is a state said to be *constitutional*? 6. When is a republic called *federal*? 7. Wherein does the chief ruler in a republic differ from the chief ruler in a monarchy? 8. What is a colony?

THE WORLD.

Total area, 197,000,000 square miles.
Area of the dry land, 52,000,000 square miles. } Pop. 1111 millions.

16. Great Divisions.—The Old World or Eastern Hemisphere consists of—

Europe. Asia. Africa.

The New World, or Western Hemisphere, consists of—

North America and South America.

Oceania, forming a division by itself, is composed of Australia, New Zealand, and the other islands of the Pacific.

17. Relations of Land and Water.—Water occupies three times as much of the earth's surface as land. The Pacific Ocean alone occupies more space than all the dry land of the globe. There is a certain correspondence between the principal masses of land and water, which may be thus represented—

Land.	*Water.*
The Old World, ...	The Pacific Ocean.
The New World, ...	The Atlantic Ocean.
Australia, ...	The Indian Ocean.

As the New World is only about half the size of the Old, so the Atlantic Ocean is only about half the size of the Pacific. The other great divisions of water are—

The Arctic Ocean . . .	around the North Pole.
The Antarctic Ocean . .	around the South Pole.

As the Arctic and Antarctic Oceans are called *polar*, so the Indian Ocean may be called *equatorial*. The bottom of the sea is as irregular as the surface of the land; and the depths of the sea are probably as great as the heights of the land. The highest mountain, of which the height has been ascertained by

---

16.—1. What is it that the Old World lies to the east, and the New World to the west of? 2. What regions are included under the name *Oceania*?

17.—1. Mention a fact which shows that the water of the globe is very much more extensive than the land. 2. Name the five great oceans. 3. Name the three principal masses of land, and the three oceans corresponding. 4. What is mentioned about the bottom and the depth of the sea?

repeated measurements, is the Dhawalagiri of the Himalaya, not quite five miles high; but a line more than five miles long let down in the Atlantic, several hundred miles west of the island of St. Helena, finds no bottom. One measurement makes another summit of the Himalaya, Mount Everest, 29,000 feet high.

18. THE ATLANTIC OCEAN.—The Atlantic Ocean washes our own shores. It is chiefly remarkable for the *gulf-stream*, so called because it issues from the Gulf of Mexico (sect. 27), and the *trade-winds*, so called because, by helping ships on their way, they further trade. These winds blow constantly on both sides of the equator, from the Old World towards the New; hence, to get into them in sailing from east to west, and to keep out of them in sailing from west to east, is a rule in navigation. The north and south *trades* are separated by an equatorial region, several hundred miles in breadth, in which calms and light fitful winds prevail. Neither trade-wind is felt farther from the equator than the 30th parallel.

19. THE EXTREMITIES OF THE LAND.—The land of the world terminates very differently towards north and south. Northwards it penetrates into the frigid zone, and terminates there in immense reaches of low shore, ice-bound in winter, swampy in summer, which almost enclose the Arctic Ocean. The only outlets of that ocean are Behring's Straits, between Asia and North America; Davis' Straits, between North America and Greenland; and the channel of the North Atlantic, in which stands the island of Iceland. Southwards, the land terminates, while yet a great way off from the frigid zone, in peninsulas pointing towards it; the Old World in the Cape of Good Hope, and the New World in Cape Horn (sect. 197).

20. POPULATION OF THE WORLD.—The World's population is distributed as follows:—

Europe, . . .	280	Millions.
Asia, . . .	650	,,
Africa, . . .	80	,,
America, . .	71	,,
Oceania, . . .	30	,,
	1111	Millions.

18.—1. For what two things is the Atlantic remarkable? 2. Where and whither do the trade-winds blow? 3. What sort of region separates them? Is it in going to America, or in coming from it, that you would seek to get into the trades?

19.—1. Describe the shores of the Arctic Ocean. 2. Name its three outlets. 3. In what capes do the Old and New Worlds terminate southwards?

Among the innumerable tribes of men, three principal races have been distinguished, viz. :—

The Caucasian, marked by handsome features, a fair complexion, and an ample beard. To this race belong the nations of Europe ; of Southern Asia, as far as the Brahmapootra ; and of Northern Africa, as far as the southern border of the Great Desert ; also all the civilized inhabitants of America and Australia.

The Mongolian, marked by high cheek-bones, small black eyes obliquely set, a tawny complexion, and a scanty beard. This race occupies all Asia, except the southern portion above indicated ; also the Arctic regions of North America. The American Indians (sect. 170) are considered a variety of the Mongolian race.

The Ethiopian, marked by high cheek-bones, thick lips, projecting jaws, a black skin, and woolly hair. This race occupies the whole of Africa south of the Great Desert ; to it also belong the aborigines of Australia, and of the numerous islands lying northwards from Australia.

21. Differences among Men.—Race is only one of many particulars in which men differ. Scarcely any two nations follow the same customs in regard to dress, food, and way of living generally. The languages of mankind have been enumerated up to 4000. The following table will show how greatly mankind differ from one another, and the majority of mankind from us, in the most important point of all, viz., religion :—

Roman Catholics,	185,000,000	Christians,	386,000,000
Protestants,	96,000,000		
Greek Church,	85,000,000		
Minor Sects,	20,000,000		
Mahometans,			185,000,000
Jews,			5,000,000
Buddhists,	300,000,000	Heathen,	585,000,000
Brahmins,	160,000,000		
Other Pagans,	125,000,000		
			1,111,000,000

The peculiar customs of a country, in so far as they belong

20.—1. What is the total population of the World ? 2. In which great division of the World does more than half its population live ? 3. Describe the Caucasian race. 4. Describe the Mongolian. 5. Describe the Ethiopian. 6. To which of these do the British belong ? 7. Over what countries is the Caucasian race spread ? 8. Over what countries the Mongolian ? 9. Over what countries the Ethiopian ?

to the outward life of its inhabitants, are, to a great extent, the result of *Climate.*

CLIMATE.

22. THE SUN'S HEAT.—Climate depends on the degree and distribution of heat and moisture in any country throughout the year. The sun is our principal source of heat. The sun's power of imparting heat depends on the *directness* with which he sends down his rays on the earth, and the *length of time*, during the day and year, that he shines over any one place. The great heat of the torrid zone (sect. 12) is owing to the directness with which the sun's rays fall upon the earth between the tropics; and the great heat of the short Arctic summer (sect. 12) is owing to the length of time that the sun, though with slanting ray, shines continuously over the Arctic regions (sect. 11). If temperature depended solely on the sun, it would vary uniformly with the latitude (sect. 7), and all places on the same parallel (sect. 3) would have the same temperature. But so far is this from being the case, that lines, drawn round the globe through places having the same temperature (called *isothermal* lines), are very irregular. The connexion between rain in general, and especially between the tropical rains and the sun's heat, has been already (sect. 12) pointed out.

23. ELEVATION.—We feel the air grow colder as we ascend a mountain. Accordingly, even in the torrid zone, all varieties of temperature can be obtained, simply by climbing. At Quito, under the equator, in South America, 10,000 feet above the sea, there is perpetual spring; and higher still, perpetual winter

---

21.—1. How many languages have been counted up? 2. What fraction of the world's population professes Christianity? 3. What Christian denomination has the greatest number of adherents? 4. What heathen religion counts the greatest number of professors? 5. Mention any one thing in the outward life of man which obviously depends on climate.

22.—1. What are the two chief elements in climate? 2. On what two circumstances does the sun's power of imparting heat depend? 3. In what region does he send his rays straight down? 4. What is the longest time that he shines continuously upon any one spot (sect. 11)? 5. Name the two spots on which he shines longest. 6. What are isothermal lines? 7. What connexion has the sun with rain in general? 8. What connexion has he with the tropical rains in particular?

(sect. 12). The effect of elevation, in diminishing temperature, so nearly coincides with that of latitude, that, whether a man climb from the bottom to the top of the Alps, or travel from their base to the Arctic regions, he meets with the same succession of trees and bushes (sect. 29); the only difference is, that the birch grows farther north than the fir; whereas, the fir grows higher up the Alps than the birch.

24. ASPECT AND PROTECTION.—If, in the northern hemisphere (sect. 3), the land slope towards the south, it has both more of the sun, and less of the cold winds that come from the Arctic ocean. Market gardeners raise their earliest vegetables on borders which slope to the south, and are often, besides, protected northwards by a high wall. For an illustration on a large scale, find out the Carpathian mountains in the heart of Europe, and notice, by the river courses, that the land slopes southwards from them on the one side, and northwards from them on the other. The Carpathians are like a high wall protecting the southward slope from the cold north, and screening the northward slope from the warm south. On this account, the country south of the Carpathians yields the finest wine (Tokay); north of them, the vine does not fruit at all.

25. LAND AND WATER.—Land is both sooner heated and sooner cooled than water (sect. 28); hence, where land prevails, the extremes of heat and cold are greater than where water prevails. Neither is summer so hot, nor winter so cold in the British Isles as in the inland countries of Europe and America, having the same latitude. Abundant moisture and an equable temperature are the elements of an *insular* climate, because the water, surrounding islands, presents abundant material for evaporation, and varies but little in temperature throughout the year; a dry atmosphere and extremes of temperature are the elements of a *continental* climate, because the land, surrounding inland places, presents little material for evaporation, and varies immensely in temperature throughout the year.

23.—1. In what zone are all climates to be found at one and the same time? 2. How can they be reached? 3. What city in South America enjoys perpetual spring? 4. In ascending the Alps, what is the last tree left behind?

24.—1. Why should a gardener in the southern hemisphere select, for his early border, ground sloping to the north? 2. Find out Tokay, in Hungary. 3. Give two reasons for the warmth of the Tokay summer.

25.—1. What is meant by an *insular* climate? 2. What by a *continental* climate?

26. **Surface of the Land.**—Climate also varies with the nature of the surface, according as it is clayey and wet, or sandy and dry, bare or wooded, and so on. Trees keep off heat, and attract moisture. Hence the clearing, drainage, and, in general, the agricultural improvement of a country increases the dryness and warmth of the climate. The climate of the British Isles is neither so cold nor so wet, as when the Romans possessed them. A similar change has passed over the climate of the North American seaboard, since its settlement by Europeans.

27. **Currents.**—Besides the tide-currents (sect. 14) which come and go twice a day, without affecting the climate, there are constant currents in the ocean, some cold, others warm, according as they start from the polar or the equatorial regions: these have a marked influence on the climate of the countries they meet. Of all ocean-currents, the gulf-stream (sect. 18) is the most influential. Entering the open Atlantic, between the peninsula of Florida and the island of Cuba, it travels northwards at the rate of about five miles an hour, and with a width of fifty miles, till it reaches 40 N. lat.; there it turns eastward; and, having at length crossed the Atlantic, it diffuses its warm waters along the shores of north-western Europe. It is partly owing to this warm current, that the British Isles, and particularly their western coasts, have a much milder winter than the adjacent continent.

28. **Winds.**—The *monsoons* of the Indian ocean afford the most striking instance of winds affecting climate. They are not constant like the trades (sect. 18), but periodical. They are most regular between Africa and Hindustan. The south-west monsoon, which carries rain to the Malabar coast of Hindustan, blows from April to October; and the north-east monsoon, which brings rain to the Coromandel coast of Hindustan, and to the eastern coast of Africa, blows from October to April. The

---

3. Why is it, that the smaller an island, and the greater the ocean surrounding it, so much the more equable is the temperature of the island? 4. Why has Great Britain a more equable temperature than Russia?

26.—1. In what two respects does the agricultural improvement of a country affect its climate?

27.—1. Mention a *periodical* current, and a *constant* current. 2. Why is the Gulf Stream so called (sect. 18)? 3. Describe its course. 4. What effect has it on the climate of the British Isles?

change of the monsoons is always attended by furious storms of thunder and lightning. *Land and sea breezes* are well known equalizers of the temperature in tropical countries. A cooling breeze blows upon the land during the heat of the day, because the land is then warmer than the water ; and it blows sea-ward during the night, because the water is then warmer than the land (sect. 25). *Prevalent* winds also affect the climate. The prevalence of south-westerly winds along the shores of the British Isles renders our climate both milder and moister than it otherwise would be. The prevalence of westerly winds, in both the North Atlantic and the North Pacific, is one cause why the eastern and western shores of the Old World, instead of corresponding with each other, correspond with the eastern and western shores, respectively, of the New World. The following places correspond in respect of climate :—

Eastern Coasts.		*Western Coasts.*	
Newfoundland, .	Japan.	British Columbia, .	British Isles.
United States, .	China.	State of California,	Spain.
Cuba, ...	Sumatra.	Lower California, .	North Africa.

29. ANIMALS AND VEGETABLES.—Animals and vegetables vary markedly with the climate. The torrid zone is distinguished by its gigantic vegetation, and the enormous size of its land animals. In Western Africa, near Cape Verde, there is a tree called *baobab*, so big that its trunk can be scooped out into a round room, thirty feet in diameter ; this would be larger than many a school-room. The huge land animals, called *elephant*, *hippopotamus*, and *rhinoceros*, belong to the torrid zone. The frigid zone is distinguished by the stunted character or total want of vegetation, and by the enormous size of its sea-animals : witness the *whale*. In the temperate zones, everything, animal and vegetable, on land and in water, is of a moderate size. The following table represents the order in

---

28.—1. Wherein do the *monsoons* differ from the trade winds ? 2. During what months does the monsoon blow which carries rain to the Malabar coast of Hindustan ? 3. Why should the sea-breeze blow during the day, and the land breeze during the night ? 4. Mention a great fact regarding the climate of the northern hemisphere. 5. Name the places on the eastern coasts of the Old and New Worlds, which correspond as to climate. 6. Name the places on the western coasts of the Old and New Worlds, which correspond as to climate.

29.—1. In which zone are the biggest trees found ? 2. In which the biggest land animals ? 3. In which the biggest sea-animals ? 4. Tell all you know of the *baobab* tree ?

which the more important trees and shrubs succeed each other according to climate :—

From the Alps to the North Pole.	From the Alps to the Equator.
The vine,	The vine.
The walnut,	The olive.
The chestnut,	Orange and lemon trees.
The oak,	Cotton.
The beach,	Date-palms.
The fir,	Coffee.
The birch,	Sugar-cane.
Rhododendra,	Pine-apple.
Herbs,	Cocoa-nut palms.
Mosses,	Cacao.

30. Man.—Man is the only creature capable of living in all climates—unless, indeed, those animals be added which really live with him. Man can take the dog everywhere, but not the horse, because the latter cannot live with man as the dog does. In the torrid zone human food and clothing are derived chiefly from the vegetable kingdom, and in the frigid zone from the animal kingdom. In the torrid zone men live chiefly on roots and gourds, the fruit and pith of trees, maize, and rice; their clothing is made of cotton, of fibrous bark, or of wild grass. In the frigid zones men live chiefly on fish and amphibious animals, and their clothing is made of skins. In the temperate zones the animal and vegetable kingdoms are laid under contribution in pretty equal proportions. The most widely distributed article of human food is the potato, and the most extensively used clothing material is cotton.

31. The Crust of a Country.—The mineral kingdom alone does not change with the climate, yet it is by no means everywhere the same. It varies from country to country, and even from district to district in the same country; and the occupations of men are as dependent upon it as upon climate. Of all minerals, coal and iron are the most useful; without them manufactures cannot be carried on extensively. If the *crust* of a country, *i.e.*, the strata immediately underlying its surface, contain what are called the carboniferous rocks, the inhabitants will have not only iron and coal, but also various kinds of building stone, lime, and clay. With such materials abundant, and a climate that neither enervates by its heat nor benumbs by its

---

30.—1. Why may the dog live where the horse cannot? 2. In what sort of climate is most animal food used? 3. Of what materials do the inhabitants of the torrid zone make their clothing? 4. Where are all the people clothed in skins?

cold, we may expect to find an industrious, intelligent, and powerful nation. All these conditions meet in various parts of the British Isles; and this is the material cause of Britain's enormous industry and wealth. Where the carboniferous rocks are wanting, there may be mines of tin and copper, as in Cornwall, or of the precious metals; but most generally agriculture and pasturage are the sole employments of the population.

THE OLD WORLD, OR EASTERN HEMISPHERE.

Area, 32,000,000 square miles, one-sixth of the Globe, amounting to three-fifths of all the land (sect 16).

Population about 1000 millions, which is more than nine-tenths of the whole population of the Globe.

32. Bird's-eye View.—The Old World consists of Europe, Asia, and Africa. The first and the last of these divisions are enormous peninsulas, projecting from the huge continental mass of Asia. Through the very heart of Europe and Asia there runs, from west to east, a series of lofty mountains, the Pyrenees, Alps, and Carpathians, in Europe; the Caucasus, on the frontier of Europe and Asia; the Himalaya and Altai, parallel to each other in Asia. The only lateral ranges northward of this almost continuous chain, are the Ural and Scandinavian mountains; accordingly the land on the northern side is, on the whole, level and low. Southwards the lateral ranges are very numerous, and spread out, with the utmost irregularity, into numerous peninsulas. In Africa also, the best-known mountains, the Atlas range in the north, the Kong and Donga mountains in the centre, run east and west. Europe is remarkable for its peninsulas, Asia for its table-lands, and Africa for its deserts.

31.—1. What is meant by the *crust* of a country? 2. Is granite found in all climates? 3. What two minerals are the most useful? 4. What minerals are found in the carboniferous rocks? 5. What metals are not found in the carboniferous rocks? 6. To what are the enormous industry and wealth of Great Britain due besides the energy of its inhabitants?

32.—1. Name, from west to east, the principal mountains in Europe and Asia. 2. On which side of these mountains lies the greatest extent of level land? 3. Name the principal mountains in Africa. 4. For what are Europe, Asia, and Africa severally remarkable?

33. TABLE OF BOUNDARIES—

(a). The boundaries between Europe and Asia, with the countries on either side.

European Side.	*Boundaries.*	*Asiatic Side.*
Russia.	Ural Mountains.	Siberia.
—	River Ural.	Turkestan.
—	Caspian Sea.	—
—	Caucasus.	Transcaucasia.
Russia. Turkey in Europe.	Black Sea.	Transcaucasia. Turkey in Asia.
—	Bosporus.	—
—	Sea of Marmora.	—
—	Dardanelles.	—
Turkey in Europe. Greece.	Archipelago.	—

(b.) The boundaries separating Africa from Europe and Asia, with the countries on either side.

European Side.	*Boundaries.*	*African Side.*
Spain.	Straits of Gibraltar.	Morocco.
France.	Mediterranean.	Algiers.
Sardinia.	—	Tunis.
Italy.	—	Tripoli.
Greece.	—	Barca.
Asiatic Side.		
Turkey in Asia.	Levant.	Egypt.
—	Isthmus of Suez.	—
Arabia.	Red Sea.	—
—	—	Nubia.
—	Straits of Bab-el-Mandeb.	Abyssinia.

34. DESCRIPTION OF THE BOUNDARIES BETWEEN EUROPE AND ASIA. —The Ural Mountains are low, not generally exceeding 1000 feet in height. Their highest point, situated near the middle of their length, is under 6000 feet: like many of the summits farther north, it is covered with perpetual snow. This range is the only interruption of the dead level which stretches from the German Ocean to Behring's Straits. It is also remarkable as yielding more iron, copper, and gold than any other range in Europe. The river Ural falls into the Caspian Sea by several mouths, which are all shallow and reedy. The

---

33.—1. Name the boundaries which divide Europe from Asia? 2. Which of these boundaries divide Russia from Asia. 3. Which of them divide Turkey in Europe from Asia? 4. What boundaries divide Turkey in Asia from Europe? 5. Name the countries north of the Mediterranean, beginning at the Straits of Gibraltar. 6. Name the countries south of the Mediterranean, beginning at the same place. 7. What three countries are on the opposite side of the Red Sea from Arabia?

Caspian Sea, the largest lake in the world (sect. 169), is salt. It has no outlet (sect. 14); yet the Volga pours into it as much water as the Mediterranean receives from Europe, which is nearly one-seventh of the whole drainage of the Continent. The Caucasus is a highly mountainous region, extending from the Caspian to the Black Sea. The highest summit (sect. 39, *c*), situated near the eastern extremity, is not far from 18,000 feet in height: it is covered with perpetual snow. The Black Sea or Euxine is very deep, and subject, in winter, to sudden and violent storms. One-third of all the running water in Europe finds its way into the Black Sea, which is accordingly fresher than the ocean. Its superfluous waters flow through the Bosporus, or Straits of Constantinople, at the rate of a league an hour, into the Sea of Marmora, and thence, in a similar current, through the Hellespont or Dardanelles, into the Archipelago. Both the straits just mentioned have an average breadth of two miles, which is contracted in each at one place to half a mile. In consequence of the multitude of islands in the Archipelago, any sea thickly studded with islands is so called: thus the sea lying to the north of Australia is called the Oriental Archipelago.

35. DESCRIPTION OF THE BOUNDARIES SEPARATING AFRICA FROM EUROPE AND ASIA.—The Mediterranean was the *Great Sea* of the Hebrews (Numb. xxxiv. 6); and the centre of the world, as known to the Greeks and Romans. Besides the Greeks and Romans, the Phœnicians, Egyptians, and Carthaginians lived upon its shores. It is salter than the ocean. Owing to the narrowness of the channel, by which it communicates with the Atlantic, at the Straits of Gibraltar—only nine miles wide at the narrowest part—the Mediterranean has scarcely any tide. The Levant is the eastern part of the Mediterranean. The Isthmus of Suez measures seventy miles across; it is swampy towards the Mediterranean, low and sandy throughout. The Straits of Bab-el-mandeb are wider than those of Gibraltar, being 14½ miles wide. The tides of the Red Sea are as feeble as those of the Mediterranean; in both, they are perceptible only in the narrower channels and inlets, where the waters most readily accumulate.

34.—1. Contrast the Ural Mountains and the Caucasus in respect of direction and height, giving particulars as to the height. 2. For what two things are the Ural Mountains remarkable? 3. By what liquid boundaries does the Black Sea discharge its superfluous waters into the Archipelago? 4. What does *Archipelago* mean as a common noun?

35.—1. What famous nations of antiquity lived on the shores of the Mediterranean? 2. Describe the Isthmus of Suez. 3. Compare the breadth of the Straits of Gibraltar and of Bab-el-mandeb with the breadth of the straits at either extremity of the Sea of Marmora.

EUROPE.

Area, 3,800,000 square miles, one-fourteenth of the dry land on the Globe, less than one-fourth of Asia.

Population, Two hundred and eighty millions, one-fourth of the whole population of the Globe.

36. Bird's-eye View.—The Carpathian mountains, and a hilly region in continuation of them westwards, which deviates little from the 51st parallel, divide Europe into two. On the northern side lies an immense plain, of which Russia forms by far the greater part. It stretches from the German Ocean to the Ural mountains (sect. 34), and, at its two extremities, in Holland (sect. 83), and on the shores of the Caspian (sect. 137), sinks below the level of the ocean. On the southern side lies a mountainous region, terminating in three peninsulas, called respectively the Iberian, the Italian, and the Grecian. The Apennines, which form the backbone of Italy, and the Balkan, which overspreads the Grecian peninsula, are both prolongations of the Alps. Scandinavia and the British Isles are not included in the above twofold division of Europe. The most remarkable circumstance in the configuration of Europe is the peninsular character of its western half, owing to the interpenetration of its mass by the Baltic and northern Mediterranean. The Baltic, a shallow sea, and fresher than the ocean, for the same reason that the Black Sea is so (sect. 34), is really a little Mediterranean, *i.e., Midland* Sea. One result of this peninsular configuration is, that the western half of Europe enjoys an almost insular climate (sect. 25). Throughout Russia the climate is highly continental.

37. Countries of Europe, with their population and Capitals—

In the Great Northern Plain—

	Population.	Capitals.
Russia, . .	67,000,000	St. Petersburg, on the Neva.
Prussia, . .	18,000,000	Berlin, on the Spree, a tributary of the Elbe by the Havel.
Carry forward,	85,000,000	

36.—1. Trace on the map the line which separates the great northern plain from the mountainous region of the south. 2. What two countries are detached both from the great plain, and from the mountainous region of Europe? 3. Name the three peninsulas in which Europe terminates southwards. 4. What is the only peninsula that points northwards? 5. Why has the western half of Europe an almost insular climate? 6. What does the word *Mediterranean* mean? 7. Describe the Baltic.

	Population.	Capitals.
Brought forward,	85,000,000	
Saxony, . .	2,000,000	Dresden, on the Elbe.
Denmark, . .	2,700,000	Copenhagen, on the Sound.
Hanover, . .	1,850,000	Hanover, on the Leine, a tributary of the Weser.
Holland, . .	3,500,000	Amsterdam, on the Zuyder Zee.
Belgium, . .	4,750,000	Brussels, on the Senne, a tributary of the Scheldt.
Minor German States,	1,500,000	
IN THE MOUNTAINOUS REGION OF THE SOUTH—		
Minor German States,	3,500,000	
Austria, . .	35,000,000	Vienna, on the Danube.
Bavaria, . .	4,600,000	Munich, on the Iser, a tributary of the Danube.
Würtemberg, .	1,700,000	Stuttgart, near the Neckar, a tributary of the Rhine.
Baden, . .	1,300,000	Carlsruhe, near the Rhine.
France, . .	37,500,000	Paris, on the Seine.
Spain, . .	15,450,000	Madrid, on the Manzanares, a tributary of the Tagus.
Portugal, . .	3,500,000	Lisbon, on the estuary of the Tagus.
Switzerland, .	2,500,000	Berne, on the Aar, a tributary of the Rhine.
Italic Kingdom, .	21,800,000	Turin, on the Po.
Papal States, .	740,000	Rome, on the Tiber.
San Marino, .	8,000	
Greece, . .	1,000,000	Athens, between the Cephissus and Ilissus.
Turkey, . .	15,500,000	Constantinople on the Bosporus.
DETACHED—		
Scandinavia, .	5,202,000	Stockholm, on Lake Maelar.
British Islands, .	29,000,000	London, on the Thames.
British Possessions,	400,000	
TOTAL,	280,000,000	

Of the above states, five are called first-rate powers, viz., Britain, France, Russia, Austria, and Prussia; four second, viz., Spain, the Italic Kingdom, Scandinavia, and Turkey; and all the others third-rate.

37.—1. Let the pupil examine himself on the above list, first, by covering from view the population and capitals, and trying if he can assign them accurately to the respective countries; then by covering from view the countries and population, and trying if he can assign them accurately to the respective capitals. 2. Name the five first-rate powers. 3. Name the four second-rate powers.

38. PRINCIPAL NATURAL FEATURES IN THE COAST-LINE OF EUROPE, BEGINNING AT THE NORTH-EAST, AND ENDING AT THE SOUTH-EAST—

Islands.	*Capes.*	*Inlets.*	*Rivers.*
		Arctic Ocean.	
			Petchora.
Nova Zembla.			Mezene.
Spitsbergen.	North Cape.	White Sea.	North Dwina.
		Atlantic Ocean.	
Iceland.			Elbe.
Faroe.			Weser.
Heligoland.	Naze.	German Ocean.	Rhine.
British Isles.			Meuse.
			Scheldt.
	Skaw.	Skager Rack.	Thames.
Zealand and Funen.		Cattegat.	
			Glommen.
Oesel.			South Dwina.
Gothland.		Baltic.	Niemen.
Bornholm.			Vistula.
			Oder.
Guernsey and Jersey.		English Channel.	Seine.
	Ortegal.	Bay of Biscay.	Loire and Garonne.
	Finisterre.		Douro.
	Rock of Lisbon.		Tagus.
	St. Vincent.		Guadiana.
			Guadalquivir.
		Mediterranean.	
Balearic.	Palos.		Xucar.
	Creux.	Gulf of Lyons.	Ebro.
Corsica.	Corso.	Gulf of Genoa.	Rhone.
Sardinia.	Spartivento.	Straits of Bonifaccio.	
Sicily.	Passaro.	Straits of Messina.	
Malta.	Spartivento.	Gulf of Taranto.	
	Leuca.	Adriatic.	Po and Adige
Ionian.		Gulf of Lepanto.	
Candia.	Matapan.		
Negropont.		Archipelago.	Maritza.
			Danube.
		Black Sea.	Dniester.
			Dnieper.
			Kouban.
		Sea of Azov.	Don.

The Caspian Sea receives the Volga, the Ural, and the Terek.

38.—After the pupil has well studied the table on the map, let him try to reproduce it, ocean by ocean, writing down first the inlets, then the rivers, after that the capes, and lastly, the islands.

39. LAKES AND MOUNTAINS—

(a) *Table of the European lakes, showing with what mountain ranges they are associated.*

Alps.	*Carpathians.*	*Balkan.*	*Ural.*	*Scandinavian.*
Swiss Lakes.	*Hungarian L.*	*Albanian L.*	*Russian L.*	*Swedish L.*
Geneva.	Balaton.	Scutari.	Ladoga.	Wener.
Constance.	Neusiedel	Ochrida.	Onega.	Wetter.
Neuchatel.		Jannina.	Peipus.	Maelar.
Lucerne.			Saima.	
Zurich.			Enara.	
Italian Lakes.			Ilmen.	
Garda.			Biela.	
Maggiore.				
Como.				

(b) *Table of the European lakes according to their size.*

Ladoga,	Russian.
Onega,	"
Wener,	Swedish.
Saima,	Russian.
Peipus,	"
Enara,	"
Wetter,	Swedish.
Maelar,	"
Biela,	Russian.
Ilmen,	"
Balaton,	Hungarian.
Geneva,	Swiss.
Constance,	Swiss.
Garda,	Italian.
Maggiore,	"
Neusiedel,	Hungarian.
Scutari,	Albanian.
Neuchatel,	Swiss.
Lucerne,	"
Ochrida,	Albanian.
Zurich,	Swiss.
Jannina,	Albanian.
Como,	Italian.

Lake Como, the smallest, is double the size of Loch Lomond, the largest of the British lakes.

(c) *Table of the principal mountain ranges in Europe, according to the height of the highest point in each.*

Range.	*Summit.*	*Height.*
Caucasus,	Elburz,	17,832
Alps,	Mont Blanc,	15,744
Pyrenees,	Pic Nethou,	11,168
Apennines,	Monte Corno.	10,114
Balkan,	Olympus,	9,749
Carpathian,	Butschetje,	9,256
Scandinavian,	Sneehaetten,	8,120
Ural,		5,720

Mont Blanc is considered the highest mountain in Europe, because Elburz is on the confines of Europe and Asia.

39.—1. What boundary range of mountains, and what range, wholly within Europe, have no lakes associated with them? 2. Which mountain range has lakes on both sides? 3. Name the seven Russian Lakes. 4. Name the five Swiss lakes. 5. Name the three Swedish lakes. 6. Name the three Albanian lakes. 7. Name the three Italian lakes. 8. Name the two Hungarian lakes. 9. Name the largest lake in each of the six lake-districts. 10. See sect. 37 for the method in which the pupil should examine himself on table (*c*.)

40. TABLE OF THE EUROPEAN RIVERS ACCORDING TO THEIR LENGTH—

Rivers	*Falling into*	*Rivers*	*Falling into*
Volga . .	Caspian Sea.	Mezene . .	Arctic Ocean.
(2200 miles)		Kouban .	Black Sea.
Danube .	Black Sea.	Douro . .	Atlantic Ocean.
Dnieper .	"	Po . . .	Adriatic Sea.
Ural . .	Caspian Sea.	Guadiana .	Atlantic Ocean.
Don . .	Sea of Azov.	Seine . .	"
(1100 miles)		Ebro . .	Mediterranean.
Petchora	Arctic Ocean.	Niemen .	Baltic Sea.
N. Dwina	White Sea.	Glommen .	"
Rhine .	German Ocean.	(400 miles)	
Dniester .	Black Sea.	Weser . .	German Ocean.
Elbe . .	German Ocean.	Garonne .	Bay of Biscay.
Vistula .	Baltic Sea.	Maritza .	Archipelago.
Loire . .	Atlantic Ocean.	Terek . .	Caspian Sea.
S. Dwina	Baltic Sea.	Guadalquivir	Atlantic Ocean.
Oder . .	"	Xucar . .	Mediterranean.
Meuse .	German Ocean.	Adige . .	Adriatic Sea.
Tagus . .	Atlantic Ocean.	Scheldt .	German Ocean.
(510 miles)		Severn . .	St. George's Channel.
Rhone .	Mediterranean.	(240 miles)	

The rivers enclosed by a bracket are equal in length.

41. INHABITANTS.—In all that pertains to civilisation, the arts useful and ornamental, the sciences, and literature, Europe takes the lead. Its inhabitants belong to the Caucasian race (sect. 20), excepting the Magyars in Hungary (sect. 96), the Finns along the eastern shores of the Baltic, the Tartars in Eastern Russia, and the Turks: these are all Mongolians. The Caucasian race in Europe is subdivided into the Celtic, which prevails in the south, the Teutonic, which prevails in the north-west, and the Slavonian, which prevails in the east. The following is a summary of the races and religions found in Europe:—

Teutonic race, .	100,000,000	Protestant, . .	56,000,000
Celtic, . .	80,000,000	Roman Catholics,	145,000,000
Slavonian, . .	70,000,000	Greek Church, .	68,000,000
Mongolian, . .	27,500,000	Mahometans, .	9,000,000
Jewish, . .	2,500,000	Hebrews, . .	2,000,000
	280,000,000		280,000,000

40.—To examine himself on this table, let the pupil, first looking at the rivers, try if he can tell what sea each falls into; and then, looking at the seas, notice how often each recurs, and try if he can name the river on account of which the sea in question is repeated.

41.—1. Enumerate the Mongolians of Europe. 2. Mention, in the order of their numerical strength, the three subdivisions of the Caucasian race in Europe. 3. To which of them do the English belong? 4. What Church has most members in Europe? 5. How many millions are there in Europe not Christian?

DETACHED. COUNTRIES OF EUROPE.

THE BRITISH ISLES—SCANDINAVIA.

THE BRITISH ISLES.

Area, 120,495 square miles, equal to one-thirtieth of Europe.

Population, Twenty-nine millions, nearly one-ninth of the Population of Europe.

42. Bird's-eye View.—The British Isles consist of Great Britain and Ireland, together with a multitude of smaller islands. Great Britain comprehends England proper, Wales, and Scotland. Great Britain and Ireland agree in that the western coasts of both are more deeply indented, more rocky, and more mountainous than the eastern. In Great Britain there is not a single mountainous district on the eastern shore. The Highlands of Scotland, the hilly region of Galloway, the mountains of Cumberland and Westmoreland, Wales, which may be called the Highlands of South Britain, and the Cornish mountains, are all on the western shore. The divisions above mentioned differ in their inland characteristics. In England cultivated fields and rich meadows prevail; in Scotland and Wales, rocks and mountains; in Ireland, fine old pasture and unimproved bog.

43. Climate.—The climate of the British Isles is highly insular (sect. 25). In respect of both temperature and moisture, Ireland has a more highly insular climate than Great Britain, and the western coast of Great Britain than the eastern coast of the same. Hence all the counties in Great Britain famous for grain, viz., Kent and Essex for wheat, Norfolk for barley, and the Lothians for oats, lie on the eastern coast; while the principal cheese-making counties, Gloucestershire, Cheshire, and

---

42.—1. What three countries make up Great Britain? 2. In what do Great Britain and Ireland agree? 3. What scenery is characteristic of England, Wales, Scotland, and Ireland respectively? 4. Name two mountain regions in North Britain, and three in South Britain. 5. Name the three principal boundaries between England and Scotland. 6. Name the two channels between England and France. 7. Name the channels separating Scotland and Wales respectively from Ireland. 8. What inland sea washes the shores of the three kingdoms? 9. What island is nearly equally distant from England, Scotland, and Ireland? 10. Whether does England or Ireland stretch farthest north?

Ayrshire, lie on the western. In like manner, the only agricultural produce for which Ireland is distinguished is butter.

ENGLAND AND WALES.

Shape, a triangle, the southern coast forming the base, and the town of Berwick-upon-Tweed the apex.

Area, 57,812 square miles, nearly half the area of the British Isles.

Population, Twenty Millions, nearly three-fourths of the whole population of the British Isles.*

44. **Bird's-eye View.**—South Britain naturally divides itself into five sections:—1. The northern section, comprising all the country north of the Mersey, Trent, and Humber, is divided into two by the Pennine chain, which stretches from near the Scottish border to the Peak of Derbyshire. On the eastern side of the Pennine chain lies the great plain of York. On the western side rise the Cumbrian mountains, one of which, Scafell (3166 feet), is the highest in England proper. 2. The western section lies west of the Severn and Dee, and is divided into two by the Cambrian range, to which belongs Snowdon (3557 feet), the highest mountain in South Britain. 3. The eastern section is a low plain extending from the Humber to the Thames. 4. The southern section comprises all the counties south of the Thames and the estuary of the Severn. The narrow breadth of this section is divided, towards the west, into two, by granite mountains called the Devonian range; towards the east, into three, by two parallel chalk ridges, called the North and South Downs, which stretch from Hampshire to the borders of Kent. 5. The midland section is an undulating plain, extending from Middlesex to Cheshire in one direction, from Gloucestershire to the borders of Nottinghamshire in another. Birmingham stands in the centre of this section, and, as may be seen by the river-courses, on its highest part.

43.—1. Describe the climate of the British Isles. 2. Mention the chief grain counties of Great Britain. 3. Mention the chief dairy counties of Great Britain? 4. Why should the former be all on the eastern coast, and the latter all on the western?

44.—1. By what three rivers is the northern section of South Britain marked off? 2. By what two the western? 3. By what two the eastern? 4. By what two the southern? 5. Distinguish between the Cumbrian mountains and the Cambrian range. 6. Name the highest mountain in each. 7. How is the southern section naturally subdivided? 8. What counties stand at the four corners of the midland section. 9. Calculate the length of England along the second meridian (sect. 8).

* According to the census of 1861, the population of England and Wales is now 20,066,224.

45. COUNTIES, COUNTY TOWNS, AND ASSIZE TOWNS.—South Britain is divided into fifty-two counties.[†]

Northern Counties, 6.

Counties.	*County Towns, &c.*	*For what remarkable.*
Northumberland,	Newcastle, on the Tyne.	Coals and glass.
Durham,	Durham, on the Wear.	Small University.
Yorkshire,	York, on the Yorkshire Ouse.	Minster and Roman antiquities.
Cumberland,	Carlisle, on the Eden.	Cathedral and Castle.
Westmoreland,	Appleby, on the Eden.	Checks and kerseys.
Lancashire,	Lancaster, on the Lune; Liverpool, on the Mersey.	John of Gaunt's castle.
	Eastern Counties, 5.	
Lincolnshire,	Lincoln, on the Witham.	Large bell, 7½ cwt.
Cambridgeshire,	Cambridge, on the Cam, a trib. of the Great Ouse.	Great University.
Norfolk,	Norwich, on the Wensum, a trib. of the Yare.	Crapes and shawls.
Suffolk,	Ipswich, on the Orwell; Bury St. Edmund's.	Wolsey's birthplace. Grammar School.
Essex,	Chelmsford, on the Chelmer.	
	Southern Counties, 10.	
Kent,	Maidstone, on the Medway.	Hops and cherries.
Sussex,	Lewes, on the Sussex Ouse.	
Surrey,	Guildford, on the Wey, a trib. of Thames; Croydon; Kingston-on-Thames.	
Berkshire,	Reading, on the Kennet, a trib. of Thames; Abingdon.	
Hampshire,	Winchester, on the Itchen.	Great Public School.
Wiltshire,	Salisbury, on the Avon; Devizes, on Kennet and Avon Canal.	Cathedral, spire 416 feet high.
Dorsetshire,	Dorchester, on the Frome.	Roman remains.
Somersetshire,	Taunton, on the Tone; Wells, on the Ax.	
Devonshire,	Exeter, on the Exe.	Cathedral.
Cornwall,	*Launceston, on the Tamar; Bodmin.	
	Midland Counties, 15.	
Gloucestershire,	Gloucester, on the Severn.	Whitfield's birthplace
Oxfordshire,	Oxford, on the Thames.	Great University.
Buckinghamshire,	*Buckingham, on the Great Ouse; Aylesbury.	Poultry market.

[†] In this list the county towns stand first, and an asterisk is attached to those of them in which assizes are no longer held. The other towns mentioned are merely assize towns.

Counties.	*County Towns, &c.*	*For what remarkable.*
Middlesex, . .	London, on the Thames.	Metropolis.
Hertfordshire, .	Hertford, on the Lea.	Malt trade.
Bedfordshire, .	Bedford, on the Great Ouse.	Straw-plait.
Northamptonshire,	Northampton, on the Nen.	Shoe-making.
Huntingdonshire,	Huntingdon, on the Great Ouse.	Cromwell's birthplace.
Rutlandshire, .	Oakham.	
Leicestershire, .	Leicester, on the Soar, a tributary of the Trent.	Woollen stockings.
Nottinghamshire,	Nottingham, on the Trent.	Lace and stockings.
Derbyshire, .	Derby, on the Derwent, a tributary of the Trent.	Calcareous spars.
Staffordshire, .	Stafford, on the Sow, a trib. of the Trent.	Leather and shoes.
Worcestershire, .	Worcester, on the Severn.	Gloves and porcelain.
Warwickshire, .	Warwick, on the Upper Avon, a trib. of the Severn.	Noble castle.
	Counties bordering on Wales, 4.	
Monmouthshire, .	Monmouth, on the Wye.	Henry V.'s birthplace.
Herefordshire, .	Hereford, on the Wye.	Gloves.
Shropshire, .	Shrewsbury, on the Severn.	Flannels.
Cheshire, . .	Chester, on the Dee.	Antiquities.
	Welsh Counties, 12.	
Flintshire, . .	*Flint, on estuary of the Dee; Mold, on the Alen.	Castle.
Denbighshire, .	*Denbigh, on trib. of the Clwyd; Ruthin, near the Clwyd.	Shoes and gloves.
Montgomeryshire,	*Montgomery; Newtown, on the Severn; Welshpool, on the Severn.	Castle.
Merionethshire, .	*Harlech; Bala, on Bala Lake; Dolgelly, on trib. of the Maw.	
Carnarvonshire, .	Carnarvon, on the Menai Straits.	Birthplace of the first Pr. of Wales, afterwards Edward II.
Anglesea, . .	Beaumaris, on the Menai Straits.	
Cardiganshire, .	Cardigan, on the Teify.	
Pembrokeshire, .	*Pembroke, on Milford Haven; Haverfordwest, on the West Cleddy.	
Carmarthenshire,	Carmarthen, on the Towy.	Birthplace of Henry VII.
Glamorganshire,	Cardiff, on the Taff; Swansea, on the Towy.	
Brecknockshire, .	Brecon, on the Usk.	Coals and iron.
Radnorshire, .	*Radnor; Presteign.	

46. NATURAL FEATURES—

West Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*East Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
		Holy Island.
	Cheviot Hills.	Farn Island.
Solway Firth.		River Alne.
River Eden.	Skiddaw.	Coquet Island.
,, Ellen.	Saddleback.	River Tyne.
,, Derwent.	Derwent Water.	,, Wear.
St. Bee's Head.	Scafell.	,, Tees.
Isle of Man.	Snafell.	Robin Hood's Bay.
Walney Island.	Ullswater.	Flamborough Head.
River Kent.	Helvellyn.	
Mōrecambe Bay.	Windermere Lake.	Bridlington Bay.
River Lune.	Crossfell.	
Rossal Point.	Whernside.	Spurn Head.
River Ribble.	Ingleborough.	River Humber.
		,, Yorkshire Ouse.
River Mersey.	Peak.	,, Trent.
,, Dee.		
,, Clwyd.	Bala Lake.	
Great Orme's Head.		
River Conway.		The Wash.
Anglesea Island.	Snowdon.	River Witham.
Holyhead.	Bardon Hill.	,, Welland.
Menai Straits.	Cader Idris.	,, Nen.
Cardigan Bay.	Plinlimmon.	,, Great Ouse.
River Teify.	Wrekin.	,, Yare.
St. David's Head.	Gogmagog Hills.	,, Waveney.
St. Bride's Bay.		,, Orwell.
Milford Haven.		The Naze.
St. Goven's Head.		River Colne.
Carmarthen Bay.		,, Chelmer.
River Towy.		Blackwater Bay.
Worms Head.		Foulness Islands.
Swansea Bay.		The Nore.
River Usk.		
,, Wye.		
,, Severn.	Malvern Hills.	River Thames.
,, Avon.	Cotswold Hills.	,, Medway.
Bristol Channel.	Chiltern Hills.	Sheppey Island.
River Parret.		Thanet Island.
Lundy Island.		North Foreland.
Barnstaple Bay.	N. and S. Downs.	South Foreland.
Land's End Point.	Devonian Range.	Dungeness Head.
Scilly Islands.		

On the south coast, the only island is the Isle of Wight: at its N.W. corner, is a cluster of pointed rocks, called the Needles. The following are the Capes, Bays, and Rivers:—

Capes.	*Bays.*	*Rivers.*
Beachy Head.	Spithead.	Sussex Ouse.
Selsea Bill.	Solent.	Itchen.
St. Alban's Head.	Torbay.	Wiltshire Avon.
Portland Point.	Plymouth Sound.	Stour.
Start Point.	Plymouth Harbour.	Frome.
Bolt Head.	Mount's Bay.	Exe.
Lizard Point.		Tamar.

47. IMPORTANT PLACES NOT COUNTY TOWNS—

(a.) *Northern Counties.*

Northumberland, anciently the ***land north of the Humber***—

Tynemouth,	Bathing-place.	North Shields,	Export of coals.

Durham—

Sunderland,	Shipbuilding, glass, and export of coals.	S. Shields,	Export of coals.
		Gateshead,	Grindstones.

Yorkshire, largest county—

Leeds, Bradford, Halifax, Huddersfield, Wakefield,	Woollen manufactures.	Barnsley,	Linen.
		Sheffield,	Cutlery.
		Doncaster,	Horse races.
		Hull,	Coasting and Baltic trade.
Scarborough,	Sea-bathing.	Harrowgate,	Mineral waters.

46.—The pupil must find out all the natural features on the map, and the master must cross-question him upon them in detail. The following questions are intended to prepare him for a general examination:—1. What four counties are traversed by the Trent? 2. What four counties are traversed by the Severn? 3. Name the three most prominent capes in Yorkshire, the three in Kent, the two in Cornwall. 4. In what counties respectively are St. Bee's Head, Great Orme's Head, St. David's Head, and Beachy Head? 5. Opposite what counties are Anglesea, Lundy Island, the Isle of Wight, Sheppey, and Holy Island respectively? 6. What three rivers fall into the Solway Firth? 7. What two into the Humber? 8. What four into the Wash? 9. What five into the Bristol Channel? 10. Distinguish the three Ouses. 11. What two rivers form respectively the northern and southern boundaries of Durham? 12. What county is cut into two by Morecambe Bay? 13. Between what two estuaries does a part of Cheshire lie? 14. Name the counties on either side of the Menai Straits. 15. What two counties lie due east of Cardigan Bay? 16. What two counties enclose the Wash? 17. Name the four counties lying along the northern bank of the Thames. 18. Name the three counties on the southern bank of the Thames. 19. Name two heads and two bays on the western shore of Pembrokeshire. 20. Between what two heads is Mount's Bay? 21. Between what two inlets is Lizard Point? 22. What two channels separate the Isle of Wight from the rest of Hampshire?

Cumberland, Lake scenery—

Keswick,	Centre of the lake district.	Whitehaven, Workington, Maryport,	Coals and iron-ore.
Borrowdale,	Plumbago.		
St. Bee's,	College for clergy.		

Westmoreland, Lake scenery—

Kendal,	Cottons & woollens.		

Lancashire, most populous county in England—

Manchester, Preston, Blackburn, Wigan, Bury, Rochdale, Bolton, Stockport, Ashton-under-lyne,	Cotton manufactures.	Warrington,	Glass and machinery.
		Liverpool,	Next to London, largest seaport in England; 100 acres of docks, and 12 miles of quay frontage.
		Fleetwood,	Harbour.
		Oldham,	Hats.
		Ormskirk,	Gingerbread.

(b.) *Eastern Counties.*

Lincolnshire, large cattle—

Grimsby,	Rival of Hull.	Boston,	Church-spire seen 40 miles at sea.

Cambridgeshire, Fens—

Ely,	Cathedral.		

Norfolk, finest barley—

Lynn Regis,	Corn trade.	Yarmouth,	Bloaters.

Suffolk, superior farming—

Newmarket,	Horse-races.		
Bury St. Edmunds,	Abbey.	Lowestoft,	Bathing-place, and coast station on the shortest route between London and Copenhagen.

Essex, finest wheat—

Colchester,	Roman remains.	Epping,	Forest.

(c.) *Southern Counties.*

Kent, wheat, hops, fruit—

Deptford, Woolwich, Sheerness,	Royal dockyards.	Gravesend,	Opposite Tilbury Fort.
Chatham,	Royal arsenal.	Tunbridge,	Mineral waters.
Rochester,	Castle.	Canterbury,	The Primate's see.
Margate, Ramsgate,	Bathing-places.	Deal,	Cæsar's landing.
Greenwich,	Observatory and hospital.	Dover,	Calais route to Paris.
		Folkstone,	Boulogne route to Paris.

Sussex, South Down sheep—

Hastings,	The Conqueror's landing-place.	Brighton,	Bathing-place.

Surrey, sandy heaths—

Southwark,	Opposite London proper.	Kingston,	Saxon Coronation-stone.
Lambeth,			
Kew,	Botanic Garden.	Epsom,	Horse-races.
Richmond,	Beautiful landscape.	Farnham,	Hops.
		Runnymede,	Magna Charta.

Berkshire or *Berks*—

Windsor,	Castle—A Royal Palace.	Wantage,	Birthplace of Alfred the Great.

Hampshire or *Hants*, oak forests—

Portsmouth,	Royal arsenal.	Southampton,	Overland Mail.
Gosport,	One with Portsmouth.	Alton,	Ale.
Portsea,		Newport,	Carisbrook Castle.
Lymington,	Bathing-place.	Ryde,	Osborne House.

Wiltshire or *Wilts*, cheese—

Stonehenge,	Druidical remains	Clarendon Park,	Constitutions of Clarendon.

Dorsetshire, sheep-farms—

Purbeck Island.	White building-stone.	Purbeck Island.	Marble.

Somersetshire, retreat of Alfred the Great—

Bath,	Hot springs.	Glastonbury,	Abbey.

Devonshire, cider and clouted cream—

Plymouth,	Extensive trade.	Torquay,	Mild winters.
Devonport,	Royal arsenal.	Brixham,	Landing-place of William III., 1688
Honiton,	Lace.		

Cornwall, tin mines—

Falmouth,	Chief port.	Penzance,	Mild winters.

(*d.*) *Midland Counties.*

Gloucestershire, cheese—

Bristol,	West Indian trade	Stroud,	West of England cloth.
Clifton,	Montpellier of England.	Cheltenham,	Mineral waters

Oxfordshire—

Woodstock,	Gloves.		

Buckinghamshire or *Bucks*—

Eton,	Great public school.		

Middlesex, metropolitan county—

Westminster,	Abbey, Houses of Parliament, and great public school	Kensington,	Royal Gardens.
		Blackwall,	Wet Docks.
		Harrow,	Great public school.
Chelsea,	Hospital.		

Hertfordshire—

St. Albans,	Burial-place of Lord Bacon.		

Bedfordshire—

Dunstable,	Straw-plait.		

Huntingdonshire, dairies—

St. Ives,	Cattle market.	Stilton,	Cheese.

Northamptonshire, shoemaking—

Weedon,	Military depôt.	Naseby,	Battle, 1645.
Peterborough,	Burial-place of Mary Stuart.	Fotheringay,	Execution of Mary Stuart.

Rutlandshire, smallest and least populous county—

Leicestershire, breed of sheep—

Lutterworth,	Wycliffe's pulpit.	Melton Mowbray,	Fox-hunting.
Market Bosworth,	Fall of Richard III.		

Nottinghamshire or *Notts*—

Newark,	Death-place of King John.

Derbyshire, lead and spars—

Buxton,	Mineral waters.	Matlock,	Mineral waters.

Staffordshire, potteries in the N. Black country in the S.—

Newcastle-under-Lyne,	Hats.	Lichfield,	Dr. Johnson's birthplace.
Longton, Stoke, Hanley, Burslem,	Earthenware.	Wolverhampton, Bilston, Wednesbury, Dudley, West-Bromwich, Walsall,	Smelting furnaces, and hardware manufacture.
Burton,	Ale.		

Worcestershire, orchards—

Droitwich,	Brine springs.	Kidderminster,	Brussels carpets.

Warwickshire, most central county—

Leamington,	Mineral waters.	Coventry,	Ribbons and watches.
Stratford,	Shakspere's birthplace.	Birmingham,	Hardware; "the toy-shop of Europe."
Rugby,	Great public school.		

(e.) *Counties bordering on Wales.*

Monmouthshire, beautiful scenery—

Chepstow,	Tides of 60 feet.	Newport,	Coals and Iron.

Herefordshire, cider—

Shropshire or *Salop*, iron—

Cheshire, cheese—

Birkenhead,	Rival of Liverpool.	Northwich,	Salt works.
		Macclesfield,	Cottons and Silks.

(*f.*) *Welsh Counties.*

Flintshire—

Holywell,	St. Winifred's well, which forms at once a powerful stream.

Denbighshire, romantic scenery of Llangollen—

Carnarvonshire—

Menai Straits,	Suspension bridge. Tubular do.	Bangor,	Slate quarry.
		Conway,	Tubular bridge.

Anglesea, seat of the Druids—

Holyhead,	Dublin packet-station.

***Merionethshire*—**			
Bala,	Largest lake in Wales.		
***Montgomeryshire*—**			
Welshpool.			
***Cardiganshire*—**			
Lampeter,	College for the Welsh clergy.		

Radnorshire, larger, but not more populous than Leicestershire.

***Glamorganshire*—**			
Merthyr Tydvil,	Iron works.	Swansea,	Copper smelting-furnaces.

48. INDUSTRIAL CENTRES.—Industrially considered, South Britain may be advantageously divided into two, by a line joining Portland Point, Dorsetshire, and Flamborough Head, Yorkshire. North-west of this line lie all the mountainous districts, where pasturage is more prevalent than agriculture, all the mines, and all the great manufacturing centres; south-east of this line are to be found only agricultural plains and slopes, with such manufactures as can be carried on without the aid of machinery, as lace, straw-plait, and shoemaking. Besides *London*, which, as the capital, belongs to the empire, there are only three towns on the south-east side of the above line, the population of which exceeds 50,000. These are *Portsmouth*, *Brighton*, and *Norwich*. The last alone is a seat of manufactures. In the following table, the large towns on the north-west of the line are marked with a dagger:—

London, with its suburbs, 2,800,000, the largest city in the world.

47.—After the pupils have been examined on the list of important places piecemeal, let the following miscellaneous questions be got up:—1. What county is pre-eminent in earthenware? 2. What three towns are famous, one for cutlery, another for straw-plait, and the third for lace? 3. What county is pre-eminent in cotton manufactures? 4. What county is pre-eminent in woollen manufactures? 5. Name a town which manufactures, literally, West of England cloth. 6. Name the English county, part of which lies north of Northumberland. 7. Name the towns directly opposite London proper, Liverpool, and Newcastle. 8. What two seaports are rivals, the one of Liverpool, the other of Hull? 9. Name the largest county, and the smallest; also the most populous. 10. Name three towns famous for horse-races. 11. In what counties do they respectively lie? 12. Name the three great royal arsenals. 13. In what counties are they situated respectively? 14. Name the four great public schools of England. 15. In what counties do they respectively lie? 16. What places in Yorkshire, Derbyshire, Warwickshire, Gloucestershire, Somersetshire, and Kent are frequented for their mineral waters?

Towns with a population exceeding 50,000. An asterisk marks that the population given is that of the *parliamentary* borough:—

† Liverpool,	444,000
† Manchester, with Salford,	440,000
† Birmingham,	296,000
† Leeds,	207,000
† Sheffield,	185,000
† Bristol,	154,000
† Newcastle, with Gateshead,	145,000
Greenwich,*	139,000
† Plymouth, with Devonport,	113,000
† Bradford,	106,000
† Stoke-upon-Trent,*	101,000
Hull (on the line)	99,000
† Portsmouth,	95,000
† Preston,	83,000
† Merthyr-Tydvil,*	
† Sunderland,	80,000
Brighton,	78,000
† Nottingham,	75,000
Norwich,	
† Oldham,	72,000
† Bolton,	70,000
Leicester (on the line),	68,000
† Blackburn,	63,000
† Wolverhampton,	61,000
† Birkenhead,	55,000
† Bath,	53,000

49. CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER BASINS[1]—

Eastern Coast.

TYNE, ... Tynemouth, North and South Shields, Newcastle, Gateshead.
WEAR, ... Sunderland, Durham.
HUMBER, . . . Grimsby, Hull.
YORKSHIRE OUSE, York.
Trib. r. b.[2] Doncaster, Sheffield, on the Don.
Leeds, on the Aire.
Wakefield, Halifax, on the Calder trib. of Aire.
Bradford, on another trib. of Aire.
Huddersfield, on trib. of the Calder.
Barnsley, on canal between the Calder and the Don.
TRENT, . . . Newark, Nottingham, Burton, Stoke.
Trib. r. b. Leicester, on the Soar.
Birmingham, on the Tame; West Bromwich near it.
Stafford, on the Sow.
Trib. l. b. Derby, Matlock, on the Derwent.
WITHAM, . . . Boston, Lincoln.
NEN, ... Peterborough, Northampton.

48.—1. What two large towns are traversed by the line joining Flamborough Head and Portland Point? 2. Describe the sort of country and industry prevalent on the south-east side of this line. 3. Describe the sort of country and industry prevalent on the north-west side of this line. 4. Which four of the six largest towns after London are manufacturing centres? 5. Which two of them are seats of commerce? 6. What sort of goods are manufactured at Manchester, Leeds, and Birmingham respectively?

[1] Places which are not *towns*, are put in italics.

[2] *r b.* and *l. b.* signify respectively "right bank" and "left bank."

GREAT OUSE, . . Lynn, Ely, St. Ives, Huntingdon, Bedford, Buckingham.
Trib. r. b. Bury St. Edmunds, on the Larke.
Cambridge, on the Cam.

YARE, ... Yarmouth.
Trib. l. b. Norwich, on the Wensum.

ORWELL, ... Ipswich.

COLNE, ... Colchester.

CHELMER, . . . Chelmsford.

THAMES, ... Gravesend, *Tilbury Fort*, Woolwich, Blackwall, Greenwich, Deptford, London, Westminster, Southwark, Lambeth, Chelsea, Kew, Richmond, Kingston, *Runnymede*, Windsor, Eton, Oxford.
Trib. r. b. Sheerness, Chatham, Rochester, Maidstone, Tunbridge, on the Medway.
Guildford, Farnham, on the Wey.
Reading, on the Kennet.
Wantage, on trib. of the Ock.
Trib. l. b. Hertford, on the Lea; Dunstable, west of the Lea.
St. Albans, on trib. of the Colne.
Woodstock, on trib. of the Isis.

STOUR, ... Canterbury.

Western Coast.

EDEN, ... Carlisle, Appleby.

ELLEN, ... Maryport.

DERWENT, . . . Workington; and on the Greta, trib. of the Derwent, Keswick.

KENT, ... Kendal.

LUNE, ... Lancaster.

WYRE, ... Fleetwood.

RIBBLE, ... Preston.

MERSEY, ... Birkenhead, Liverpool, Stockport, Warrington.
Trib. r. b. Manchester, on the Irwell.
Bolton, on trib. of the Irwell.
Ashton-under-Lyne, on the Tame.
Trib. l. b. Norwich, on the Weaver.
Macclesfield, on the Bollin.

DEE, ... Flint, Chester, Llangollen, Bala.

CLWYD, ... Denbigh.

MAW, ... Dolgelly, on a tributary.

TEIFY, ... Cardigan, Lampeter.

TOWY, ... Carmarthen.

SEVERN, ... Gloucester, Worcester, Shrewsbury, Welshpool.
Trib. r. b. Cardiff, Merthyr Tydvil, on the Taff.
Newport, Brecknock, on the Usk.
Chepstow, Monmouth, Hereford, on the Wye.

Severn, ... *Trib. l. b.*	Clifton, Bristol, Bath, on the Lower Avon. Cheltenham, on the Chelt. Stratford, Warwick, Rugby, on the Upper Avon; Leamington, on the Leam, trib. of the Upper Avon; Coventry, north of Upper Avon. Kidderminster, on the Stour; Dudley, Wolverhampton, and Bilston, east of the Stour.
Ax, ...	Wells.
Parret and Tone,	Taunton, on the Tone; Bridgewater, on the Parret; Glastonbury, on trib. of the Parret.

Southern Coast.

Tamar, . . .	Plymouth, Devonport, Launceston.
Exe, ...	Exeter.
Otter, . . .	Honiton.
Frome, . . .	Dorchester.
Wiltshire Avon,	Salisbury, *Clarendon Park.*
Itchen, . . .	Southampton, Winchester.
Sussex Ouse, .	Lewes.

MARITIME TOWNS NOT AT THE MOUTH OF ANY RIVER.

Eastern Coast.

Scarborough, Lowestoft, Margate, Ramsgate, Deal, Dover, Folkstone.

Western Coast.

Whitehaven, St. Bees, Douglas and Castleton (Isle of Man), Holyhead, Bangor, Carnarvon, Swansea, Penzance.

Southern Coast.

Falmouth, Brixham, Torquay, Lymington, Newport, Ryde, Portsmouth, Gosport, Portsea, Brighton, Hastings.

49.—The pupil should first familiarize himself with this list, by assigning each town to its county; then let him try to reproduce the list, looking at the names of the rivers, and concealing from view those of the towns. The following are general questions:—1. Name the five river-basins in which towns are most numerous. 2. Which two of these five send their drainage to the sea by the same estuary? 3. Distinguish the three Ouses. 4. Distinguish the three Avons.

SCOTLAND.

Area, 30,238 square miles, little more than half that of England and Wales.

Population, Three millions, nearly one-sixth that of England and Wales.

50.—BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The outline of Scotland is so deeply indented, that no part of the interior is more than forty miles from the sea; and its surface is so irregular, that even its largest rivers are navigable only a short distance above their mouths or estuaries. The Clyde is navigable only to Glasgow, the Forth only to Stirling, and the Tay only to Perth. A chain of mountains, beginning near the east coast with the Grampians, and extending, with manifold offshoots, through western Perthshire, Stirlingshire, and Dumbartonshire, to the Firth of Clyde, separates the Highlands from the Lowlands of Scotland. The country north-west of that mountain chain, from the Mull of Cantire to Cape Wrath, is wild and mountainous, excepting only the north-eastern coast, which is very low. The Highlands are wholly given up to pasture, and the few inhabitants speak a Celtic dialect, called Gaelic. The Highlands are divided into two by the gorge of Glenmore, through which the Caledonian Canal has been constructed. Near the southern entrance of the canal is Ben Nevis (4406 feet), the highest mountain in the British Isles. The Lowlands are so called only by comparison with the Highlands, for they are exceedingly diversified by hill and dale. The natural divisions of the Lowlands may be thus represented—

The Grampians, the southern boundary of the Highlands:
Valley of the Tay, forming the greater part of Strathmore, the largest tract of level land in Scotland.
The Lomonds, Ochills, and Campsie Fells.
Valleys of the Forth and Lower Clyde, the former pre-eminent in fertility and high farming, the latter in mining and manufacturing industry.
Lammermoors and Pentland Hills.
Valleys of the Tweed and Upper Clyde.
The Cheviots and Lowthers.
The slope towards the Solway, divided into numerous dales, each with its stream.

50.—1. Compare Scotland with South Britain in respect of area and population.

2. Trace on the map the curved line which separates the Highlands from the Low-

51. **Counties and County Towns.***—Scotland is divided into thirty-three counties:—

I.—*Eleven Central Counties belonging to the Valleys of the Forth and Clyde.*

Counties.	*County Towns.*
Haddingtonshire, or East Lothian,	Haddington, on the Tyne.
Edinburghshire, or Mid Lothian,	Edinburgh, near the Firth of Forth, the capital, the seat of an ancient castle, and of a famous university.
Linlithgowshire, or West Lothian,	Linlithgow, on Linlithgow Loch, birthplace of Mary Queen of Scots.
Fifeshire, ...	Cupar, on the Eden.
Kinross-shire, the least populous county,	Kinross, on Loch Leven, where Mary Qn. of Scots was some time confined.
Clackmannanshire, the smallest county,	Alloa, on the Forth, famous for Ale.
Stirlingshire, . . .	Stirling, on the Forth, has an ancient castle.
Dumbartonshire, . . .	Dumbarton, on the Leven, has an ancient castle on the Clyde.
Lanarkshire, the most populous county,	Lanark, on the Clyde.
Renfrewshire, . . .	Renfrew, on the Cart, trib. of Clyde.
Ayrshire, ...	Ayr, on the Ayr, birthplace of Burns.

II.—*Seven Southern Counties belonging to the Vale of Tweed, and the Solway Slope.*

Berwickshire, . . .	Greenlaw, on the Blackadder, trib. of Tweed.
Roxburghshire, . . .	Jedburgh, on the Jed, trib. of Teviot.
Selkirkshire, . . .	Selkirk, on the Ettrick, trib. of Tweed.
Peeblesshire, . . .	Peebles, on the Tweed.
Dumfriesshire, . . .	Dumfries, on the Nith, burial-place of Burns.
Kirkcudbright, . . .	Kirkcudbright, on the Dee.
Wigtownshire, . . .	Wigtown, on Wigtown Bay.

III.—*Fifteen Northern Counties belonging, except Orkney, either in whole or in part, to the Highlands.*

Buteshire, ...	Rothesay, on the Firth of Clyde, sea-bathing place.
Argyleshire, . . .	Inverary, on Loch Fyne, famed for herrings.

---

lands. 3. What district north of this line does not belong to the Highlands? 4. Mention an island in the Highlands, the whole of which lies farther south than the town of Berwick-upon-Tweed. 5. Name the single Scotch county, the whole of which lies evidently farther south than the Mull of Cantire. 6. Mention the three valleys and the three hilly ranges south of the Grampians.

* The only towns, besides Edinburgh, in which assizes are held, are the following, called Circuit Towns:—Inverness, Aberdeen, Perth, Stirling, Inverary, Glasgow, Ayr, Dumfries, and Jedburgh.

Perthshire,	**Perth, on the Tay, Scone palace.**
Forfarshire, or Angus,	**Forfar, near Forfar Loch.**
Kincardineshire, or Mearns,	**Stonehaven.**
Aberdeenshire,	**Aberdeen, on the Dee, seat of a university.**
Banffshire,	**Banff, on the Deveron.**
Morayshire,	**Elgin, on the Lossie.**
Nairn,	**Nairn, on the Nairn.**
Inverness-shire,	**Inverness, on the Ness, capital of the Highlands.**
Ross-shire,	**Tain, on Dornoch Firth.**
Cromarty,	**Cromarty, on Cromarty Firth.**
Sutherlandshire,	**Dornoch, on Dornoch Firth.**
Caithness-shire,	**Wick, on the Wick, great herring fishing station.**
Orkney and Shetland,	**Kirkwall and Lerwick, both on the coast.**

52. NATURAL FEATURES.—For the sake of convenience, the coast-line is divided into two by the head of Solway Frith in the south, and the meeting-point of Sutherlandshire and Caithness-shire in the north.

West Coast.	*Interior.*	*East Coast.*
Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Mountains and Lakes.*	*Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Solway Firth.	South Coast.	
River Annan.	The Cheviots.	River Tweed.
„ Nith.	St. Mary's Loch.	
„ Dee.	The Lowthers.	
Wigtown Bay.	Loch Ken.	
Burrow Head.		
Luce Bay.		
Mull of Galloway.		
Corsill Point.		
Loch Ryan.		
Ailsa Craig.		
Mull of Cantire.	The Lammermoors.	St. Abb's Head.
River Ayr.		

51.—See sect. 45. 1. What three counties are the Lothians? 2. Name the birth-place and the burial-place of Burns. 3. What three counties border with England? 4. Name the two northernmost counties of the Scottish mainland. 5. Name the three southernmost counties. 6. Name the four counties south of the Forth which do not at any point touch the sea. 6. Name the single county north of the Forth which does not at any point touch the sea. 7. Name from north to south the five counties bordering on Ayrshire. 8. What counties would you pass through in travelling along the coast from Berwick-upon-Tweed to Stirling? 9. What counties would you pass through in travelling along the coast from Aberdeen to Inverness? 10. Name five counties which lie farther south than the most northern part of England. 11. Name three county towns that have each an ancient castle.

West Coast. *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*	*Interior.* *Mountains and Lakes.*	*East Coast.* *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Isle of Arran.	Goat Fell.	
,, Bute.	Tinto Hill.	River Tyne.
River Irvine.	Pentland Hills.	Firth of Forth.
Firth of Clyde.	North-Berwick Law.	River Forth.
River Clyde.	Campsie Fells.	Bass Rock.
Loch Long.	Loch Lomond.	Isle of Inchkeith.
Loch Fyne.	Ben Lomond.	Isle of May.
Mull of Oe.	The Ochils.	Fife Ness.
Isle and Sound of Isla.	Loch Katrine.	River Tay.
Isle and Sound of Jura.	Ben Ledi.	Firth of Tay.
Isle of Colonsay.	Ben Vorlich.	Buddon Ness.
Isle and Sound of Mull.	Loch Awe.	
Islands of Staffa and Iona.	Loch Earn.	
Kerrera Island.	Ben Cruachan.	
Loch Linnhe.	Loch Tay.	
Island of Tiree.	Ben Lawers.	
Island of Coll.	Schiehallion.	
Loch Sunart.	Loch Rannoch.	River South Esk.
Ardnamurchan Point.	Loch Shiel.	
Loch Levin.	The Grampians.	River North Esk.
Loch Eil.	Ben Nevis.	
Rum Island.	Loch Lochy.	
Canna Island.	Loch Oich.	River Dee.
Sleat Sound.	Lochnagar.	,, Don.
Isle of Skye.	Ben Macdhui.	Buchan Ness.
Islands of Barra and South Uist.	Cairntoul.	Kinnaird's Head.
Islands of Benbecula and North Uist.	Loch Ness.	River Deveron. ,, Spey.
Loch Carron.	Cairngorm.	
Aird Point.	Ben Attow.	Burg Head.
The Minch.		Moray Firth.
Island of Harris.	Ben Wyvis.	River Ness.
Island of Lewis.		Cromarty Firth.
Butt of Lewis.		Tarbet Ness.
Loch Broom.	Ben More.	Dornoch Firth.
	Loch Assynt.	Noss Head.
Cape Wrath.		Duncansby Head.
Far-Out Head.	☞ North Coast ☜	Dunnet Head.

North of the Pentland Firth lie the Orkney and Shetland Islands.

52.—See sect. 46. 1. Name the five firths on the eastern coast, and the two on the western. 2. What difference is there between the meaning of *loch* in the geography of Scotland, and *lake* in that of England? 3. Name the three principal rivers which drain the Solway slope. 4. Name the three lochs in the course of the Caledonian canal. 5. What separates the Scottish mainland from

53. IMPORTANT PLACES NOT COUNTY TOWNS—

(a.) *In the Central Counties.*

HADDINGTONSHIRE.—*Dunbar*, two battles, one in 1296, won by Edward I., the other, in 1650, won by Cromwell. *Prestonpans*, ale and oysters.

EDINBURGHSHIRE.—*Leith*, port of Edinburgh. *Portobello*, bathing place. *Dalkeith*, large grain-market. *Musselburgh*, battle of Pinkie, 1547.

FIFESHIRE.—*St. Andrews*, oldest University in Scotland. *Dunfermline*, table-linen.

STIRLINGSHIRE.—*Falkirk*, largest fairs in Scotland for horses, cattle, and sheep. *Carron*, largest iron-works in Scotland. *Bannockburn*, battle in 1314, won by Robert Bruce over Edward II. of England.

LANARKSHIRE.—Coal mines, iron and cotton manufactures, and commerce have accumulated in this county more than one-sixth of the whole population of Scotland. *Glasgow* is the centre of all this industry, and is also the seat of a University. *Airdrie*, coals and iron.

RENFREWSHIRE.—*Paisley*, silk shawls. *Port-Glasgow* and *Greenock*, secondary ports on the Clyde.

AYRSHIRE.—*Kilmarnock*, tartans and carpets. *Irvine*, birth-place of the poet James Montgomery. *Mauchline* and *Cumnock*, wooden snuff-boxes. *Ardrossan*, excellent harbour.

(b.) *In the Southern Counties.*

BERWICKSHIRE.—*Coldstream*, where General Monk raised the Coldstream Guards.

ROXBURGHSHIRE.—*Kelso* and *Melrose*, ruins of ancient abbeys. *Hawick*, woollen manufactures.

SELKIRKSHIRE.—*Galashiels*, woollen manufactures.

DUMFRIESSHIRE.—*Gretna*, once famous for clandestine marriages. *Moffat*, mineral waters. *Annan*, a good harbour.

---

the Orkneys and the Hebrides respectively? 6. Name the extreme north, south, east, and west points of the Scottish mainland. 7. Name the three bays in Wigtownshire. 8. Name the three capes in Wigtownshire. 9. What three counties meet in Cairngorm? 10. Name two capes in Caithness-shire. 11. Name two capes in Aberdeenshire. 12. In what counties are the Butt of Lewis, Tarbet Ness, the Mull of Cantire, and St. Abb's Head? 13. In what counties are Ben Lomond, Ben Nevis, and Ben Wyvis respectively situated? 14. In what counties are Loch Ken, Loch Katrine, Loch Awe, and Loch Leven respectively situated? 15. What two counties are separated by Loch Levin? 16. What two counties are separated by Loch Lomond? 17. What group of islands is in the same latitude as St. Petersburg?

WIGTOWNSHIRE.—*Portpatrick*, the port in Scotland nearest to Ireland. *Stranraer*, chief sea-port in the county.

(c.) *In the Northern Counties.*

ARGYLLSHIRE.—*Campbeltown*, whisky distilleries. *Oban*, steamboat station, and rendezvous for tourists.

PERTHSHIRE.—*Bridge of Allan*, mineral waters; most fashionable resort in Scotland. *Dunkeld*, where Gavin Douglas, the first translator of Virgil into English verse, was bishop.

FORFARSHIRE.—*Dundee*, linen and hempen manufactures, gloves, and marmalade. *Montrose* and *Arbroath*, considerable market towns.

KINCARDINESHIRE.—*Laurencekirk*, wooden snuff-boxes. *Finnan*, dried haddocks.

ABERDEENSHIRE.—*Balmoral*, the mountain home of Queen Victoria. *Peterhead*, a station for whalers, and for the export of granite.

CAITHNESS-SHIRE.—*Thurso*, a fishing station.

54. INDUSTRIAL CENTRES.—*Glasgow* alone competes with the great cities of England; containing, as it does, manufactures and commerce, it is a little Manchester and a little Liverpool in one.

The following is a list of all the towns in Scotland containing a population of 10,000, or upwards:—

Glasgow,	395,000	Arbroath,	18,000
Edinburgh,	168,000	Montrose,	15,000
Dundee,	90,000	Stirling,	14,000
Aberdeen,	74,000	Dunfermline,	
Paisley,	47,000	Dumfries,	
Greenock,	42,000	Airdrie,	13,000
Leith,	34,000	Inverness,	12,000
Perth,	25,000	Kirkcaldy,	11,000
Kilmarnock,	23,000	Hamilton,	
Ayr,	19,000		

53.—1. Name the two University towns which are not also county towns. 2. Name the two county towns which are also University towns. 3. What town is separated from England only by a river? 4. Name three places where wooden snuff-boxes are manufactured. 5. What town is famous for whisky? 6. What are the chief manufactures in Dundee? 7. Distinguish between the manufactures of Paisley and those of Glasgow. 8. Name two towns that have woollen manufactures.

54.—1. In what respect does Glasgow differ from Liverpool? 2. Name the five largest towns in Scotland. 3. Which three of them are ports? 4. Which three of them are not county towns? 5. Of the others, name the nine which are not county towns.

55. Classification of Towns according to the River Basins—

Eastern Coast.

Tweed,	Berwick,[1] Coldstream, Kelso, Melrose, Peebles.
	Trib. r. b. Hawick, on the Teviot; Jedburgh on the Jed, trib. of the Teviot.
	Selkirk, on the Ettrick.
	Trib. l. b. Greenlaw, on the Blackadder.
Tyne,	Haddington.
Esk,	Musselburgh, Dalkeith.
Leith (a brook),	Leith, Edinburgh.
Forth,	Alloa, Stirling.
	Trib. r. b. Carron, on the Carron, and near it Falkirk; Bannockburn, on the Bannock.
	Trib. l. b. Bridge of Allan, on the Allan.
Leven,	Kinross.
Eden,	Cupar.
Tay,	Dundee, Perth, Dunkeld.
South Esk,	Montrose.
Carron,	Stonehaven.
Dee,	New Aberdeen, Balmoral.
Don,	Old Aberdeen.
Deveron,	Banff.
Lossie,	Elgin.
Nairn,	Nairn.
Ness,	Inverness.
Wick,	Wick.

Western Coast.

Annan,	Annan, Moffat.
Nith,	Dumfries.
Dee,	Kirkcudbright.
Ayr,	Ayr, Mauchline; on the Lugar, a trib., Cumnock.
Irvine,	Irvine, on the Kilmarnock, a trib., Kilmarnock.
Clyde,	Greenock, Port-Glasgow, Glasgow, Lanark.
	Trib. r. b. Dumbarton, on the Leven.
	Trib. l. b. Paisley, on the Cart; Renfrew, on trib. of the Cart.

Northern Coast.

Thurso,	Thurso.

MARITIME TOWNS NOT AT THE MOUTH OF ANY RIVER.

Eastern Coast.

Dunbar, Prestonpans, Portobello, St. Andrews, Arbroath, Finnan, Peterhead, Cromarty, Tain, Dornoch.

---

[1] Berwick-upon-Tweed does not properly belong to either England or Scotland (sect. 62). Though on the Scottish side of the Tweed, its Established Church and its law-courts are those of England.

Western Coast.

Wigtown, Portpatrick, Stranraer, Ardrossan, Rothesay, Campbeltown, Inverary, Oban.

IRELAND.

Area, 32,445 square miles, somewhat more than that of Scotland, Population under Six millions, equal to one-fifth of the whole population of the British Isles.

56. Bird's-eye View.—The middle of Ireland is a low-lying plain, which stretches westward from sea to sea, and occupies one-fourth of the whole area of the island. Great part of it is covered by bog; the largest tract is called the bog of Allen. Southwards, this plain is shut in by the Slievh Bloom and Wicklow ranges, in the latter of which is to be found the most picturesque scenery in Ireland. Northwards, it is terminated by a swell of the surface, which rises into mountains at the corners, as the Mourne mountains in County Down, the mountains of Antrim near the Giants' Causeway, Nephin and Croagh Patrick in Mayo. All the corners of Ireland are mountainous, except the south-eastern. The Macgillicuddy Reeks, in the south-western corner, contain the highest mountain in Ireland, Carran Tuall (3410 feet), at the base of which lie the Lakes of Killarney. The grandest scenery in Ireland is here. The chief river, the Shannon, belongs to the central plain. It is navigable to Lough Allen, a distance of 240 miles, and is the largest river in the British Isles.

57. Counties and County Towns.—Ireland is divided into four provinces, which are subdivided into thirty-two counties. These counties are never called *shires*, as in Great Britain. Thus, *Dublinshire* is never said, but *County Dublin.**

---

55. (See sect. 49.)—1. Besides the two Esks mentioned in the text, find out other two. 2. Which of them belongs partly to England? 3. Distinguish the two Dees 4. In what English county is there a Dee? 5. Distinguish between the Scotch and the English Tyne, by naming the principal town on each.

56.—1. Whether does Ireland exceed Scotland most in size or in population? 2. Of two men who should pass through the middle of Ireland, one from north to south, and the other from east to west, which would have most climbing? 3. In what two bays does the central plain terminate eastward and westward? 4. With what range is the most picturesque scenery in Ireland connected? 5. With what range is the grandest scenery in Ireland connected? 6. Name the largest bog and the highest mountain in Ireland.

* Assizes are held in all the county towns of Ireland.

I. ULSTER.—*Nine Counties.*

Counties.	*County Towns.*
Antrim,	**Antrim, on Lough Neagh.**
Down,	**Downpatrick, on Strangford Lough, burial-place of St. Patrick.**
Armagh,	**Armagh, on the Callan; the Primate's see.**
Monaghan,	**Monaghan, on the Blackwater.**
Cavan,	**Cavan, on a tributary of the Erne.**
Fermanagh,	**Enniskillen, on the Erne.**
Tyrone,	**Omagh, on a tributary of the Mourne.**
Donegal,	**Lifford, on the Foyle.**
Derry,	**Londonderry.**

II. LEINSTER.—*Twelve Counties.*

Louth,	**Dundalk, on Dundalk Bay; export of grain.**
East Meath,	**Trim, on the Boyne.**
West Meath,	**Mullingar, on the Royal Canal.**
Longford,	**Longford, on a tributary of the Shannon.**
King's County,	**Tullamore, on the Grand Canal, centre of the Bog of Allen.**
Queen's County,	**Maryborough, near the Barrow; named after Bloody Mary.**
Kilkenny,	**Kilkenny, on the Nore; marble quarries.**
Wexford,	**Wexford, on the Slaney.**
Carlow,	**Carlow, on the Barrow.**
Kildare,	**Naas, near the Liffey.**
Wicklow,	**Wicklow, on the Vartry.**
Dublin,	**Dublin, on the Liffey; capital, and seat of a University.**

III. MUNSTER.—*Six Counties.*

Tipperary,	**Clonmel, on the Suir.**
Waterford,	**Waterford, on the Suir.**
Cork,	**Cork, on the Lee; seat of a Queen's College, and of an immense provision trade.**
Kerry,	**Tralee, on Tralee Bay.**
Limerick,	**Limerick, on the Shannon.**
Clare,	**Ennis, on the Fergus.**

IV. CONNAUGHT.—*Five Counties.*

Galway,	**Galway, on Galway Bay; seat of a Queen's College.**
Roscommon,	**Roscommon.**
Leitrim,	**Carrick, on the Shannon.**
Sligo,	**Sligo, on Sligo Bay.**
Mayo,	**Castlebar.**

57.—(See sect. 45). 1. Name the two counties nearest Scotland. 2 What three counties form the northern shore? 3. What three counties form the southern

58. Natural Features.—For the sake of convenience, the coast-line is divided into two by Lough Foyle and Youghal Harbour.

West Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.		*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*East Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*	
Lough Foyle.	North Coast.	(Those not marked as Lakes are names of Mountains.)		North Coast.
River Foyle.			River Bann.	
Innishowen Head.				
Malin Head.			Bengore Head.	
Lough Swilly.			Rathlin Island	
Bloody Foreland.			Benmore Head.	
Arranmore Island.			Lough Larne.	
Donegal Bay.		Bluestack.	Belfast Lough.	
River Erne.		Lough Erne.	River Lagan.	
Sligo Bay.		Lough Neagh.	Strangford Lough.	
Killala Bay.		Lough Allen.	Dundrum Bay.	
Mullet Island.		Mourne.	Carlingford Lough.	
Blacksod Bay.		Ox.		
Achill Island.		Nephin.		
Clew Bay.		Croagh Patrick.	Dundalk Bay.	
		Lough Conn.	River Boyne.	
		Lough Ree.	Lambay Island.	
Slyne Head.		Dublin.	Howth Head.	
Galway Bay.		Lough Mask.	Dublin Bay.	
		Lough Corrib.		
Arran Island.		Slievh Bloom.		
Loop Head.		Wicklow.	Wicklow Head.	
River Shannon.		Lough Derg.	River Avoca.	
Tralee Bay.			Cahore Point.	
Brandon Bay.			Wexford Harbour.	
Dingle Bay.		Macgillicuddy.	River Slaney.	
Valentia Island.		Killarney Lakes.	Carnsore Point.	South Coast.
Kenmare River.				
Bantry Bay.			Saltees Rocks.	
Mizen Head.			Cape Hook Tower.	
Cape Clear.	South Coast.			
Cape Clear Island.			Waterford Harbour.	
Kinsale Harbour.		Knockmealdown.	River Suir.	
River Bandon.			River Nore.	
Cork Harbour.			Youghal Harbour.	
River Lee.			River Blackwater.	

---

shore? 4. Name the central county of Ireland. 5. Name the central county of Ulster. 6. What county of Munster lies on the western bank of the Shannon? 7. On what rivers are Dublin, Belfast, Cork, and Limerick respectively situated? 8. Name the three littoral counties between Dublin and Belfast.

58.—(See sect. 46). 1. Name the extreme points, north and south, of the Irish mainland. 2. Is Cape Clear on the mainland? 3. Wherein is the Irish *lough* the

59. IMPORTANT PLACES NOT COUNTY TOWNS—

ANTRIM.—*Belfast*, the seat of a Queen's College, and the only highly manufacturing town in Ireland. Linen is the staple, but cottons are also manufactured.

DOWN.—*Donaghadee*, the nearest port to Great Britain. *Newry*, exports grain and live stock.

DERRY.—*Coleraine* gives name to a sort of fine linen cloth.

LOUTH.—*Drogheda* exports grain.

WEST MEATH.—*Athlone*, called the *centre of Ireland*, has a military depot.

KILDARE.—*Maynooth*, seat of a great Roman Catholic college.

DUBLIN.—*Kingstown*, so called in honour of George IV.; the chief postal communication between Ireland and Great Britain takes place by Kingstown and Holyhead.

CORK.—*Queenstown*, so called in honour of Queen Victoria; formerly the Cove of Cork.

GALWAY.—*Ballinasloe*, where are held the largest agricultural fairs in Ireland.

60. INDUSTRIAL CENTRES.—The only staple manufacture of Ireland is linen. This manufacture is carried on almost exclusively in Ulster; and *Belfast*, by far the largest town in that province, is the only one in Ireland worthy of being called an industrial centre. *Dublin* is famous for porter and poplins. Agriculture is the leading employment throughout the island. Hence large towns are few, fewer than even in Scotland, the population of which is not half that of Ireland. There are only four with a population of 50,000, or upwards. The fol-

---

exact correspondent of the Scotch *loch*, rather than of the English *lake*? 4. What four inlets wash the shores of County Down? 5. Between which two of them are the Mourne mountains? 6. What bay separates Mount Nephin from Croagh Patrick? 7. Name the lake at the source of the Shannon, and the largest two in its course. 8. What rivers form the harbours of Wexford, Waterford, and Cork? 9. To what province are all the sea-loughs confined? 9. Which is the largest inland lough? 10. What cape and island would a Belfast steamer, sailing from Dublin, leave on the left at the very beginning of its voyage?

59.—1. Name the town, not a county town, in which there is a Queen's College. 2. Name the two county towns in each of which there is a Queen's College. 3. Near to what county towns are Kingstown and Queenstown respectively situated? 4. For what are Belfast and Ballinasloe severally pre-eminent?

60.—1. To what articles does Dublin lend its name? 2. How many towns in England, and how many in Scotland, are more populous than Dublin? 3. Name them. 4. Why should agriculture be less favourable than manufactures to the formation of large towns?

lowing is a list of all the towns in Ireland containing a population of 10,000, or upwards :—

Dublin and suburbs,	296,000	Sligo,	13,000
Cork,	102,000	Kingston,	12,000
Belfast,	76,000	Newry,	
Limerick,	55,000	Wexford,	
Waterford,	29,000	Clonmel,	11,000
Galway,	25,000	Tralee,	
Londonderry,	20,000	Dundalk,	10,000
Drogheda,	18,000	Lisburn,	
Kilkenny,	17,000		

61. CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER BASINS—

FOYLE, . . Londonderry.
Trib. r. b. Omagh, on the Stroule, trib. of the Mourne.

BANN, . . . Coleraine.
Trib. r. b. Antrim, on Six Mile Water.
Trib. l. b. Monaghan, on the Blackwater.
Armagh, on Callan, trib. of Blackwater.

Eastern Coast.

LAGAN, . . Belfast.
QUOILE, . . Downpatrick.
NEWRY WATER, Newry.
CASTLETOWN RIVER, Dundalk.
BOYNE, . . Drogheda, Trim.
LIFFEY, . . Dublin; and, south of the Liffey, Naas.
VARTRY, . . Wicklow.
SLANEY, . . Wexford.

Southern Coast.

BARROW, . . Carlow.
Trib. r. b. Kilkenny, on the Nore.
Maryborough, on the Triogue.
SUIR, . . . Waterford, Clonmel.
LEE, . . . Queenstown, Cork.

Western Coast.

SHANNON, . Limerick, Athlone, Carrick-on-Shannon.
Trib. r. b. Ennis, on the Fergus.
Ballinasloe, on the Suck.
Roscommon, on the Hine.
Trib. l. b. Mullingar, on the Upper Brosna.
Tullamore, on trib. of Upper Brosna.
Longford, on the Camlin.

CORRIB, . . Galway.

61.—See Sect. 49.

MOY, . . .	Castlebar, on trib. of the Moy.
GARVOGUE, .	Sligo.
ERNE, . . .	Enniskillen; and, on trib. of the Erne, Cavan.

MARITIME TOWNS NOT AT THE MOUTH OF ANY RIVER.

Eastern Coast.—Donaghadee, Kingstown.
Western Coast.—Tralee.

UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

62. CONSTITUENT PARTS.—England proper is by far the largest, the most populous, and the wealthiest member of the Union. Wales was subdued by England, and incorporated with it under Edward I. North and South Britain were united under one crown in 1603, when James VI. of Scotland became, by hereditary succession, James I. of England: in 1707, the English and Scotch Parliaments were merged into one. Ireland was annexed to England by conquest under Henry II. in 1174, but retained a separate Parliament till 1800. In 1551, Berwick-upon-Tweed (sect. 55, note 1) was declared by treaty independent of both England and Scotland: in Acts of Parliament it is specially mentioned as if it belonged to neither. The Isle of Man has a separate government of its own. So also have the Channel Islands, the sole remnant of William the Conqueror's Norman possessions still retained by England: they are Alderney, Guernsey, Jersey, and Sark. St. Helier, the largest town, is in Jersey. Most of the inhabitants of the Channel Islands speak French. The country people in the Isle of Man speak a peculiar Celtic dialect, called Manx.

63. RELIGION AND GOVERNMENT.—The inhabitants of the United Kingdom differ to some extent in language and race, and very markedly in religion. Celtic dialects are still spoken where Celtic blood prevails, viz., in Wales, in the Highlands of Scotland, in the west of Ireland, and in the Isle of Man. With these exceptions, the inhabitants of the United Kingdom belong

---

62.—1. What portions of the United Kingdom were united to England by conquest? 2. How did the crowns of England and Scotland come to be united? 3. When were the parliaments of Scotland and Ireland respectively incorporated with that of England? 4. What distinguishes Berwick-upon-Tweed from every other town in Great Britain? 5. Name the four Channel Islands. 6. How did they come into the possession of the English.

to the Teutonic race (sect. 41), and speak the English language. Great Britain is for the most part Protestant; Ireland is for the most part Roman Catholic. The Established Church in England and Ireland is of the Episcopalian form, and in Scotland of the Presbyterian form. Notwithstanding these differences, the people are content to live under one and the same government, which is a limited monarchy (sect. 15), consisting of King or Queen, Lords, and Commons. The King or Queen is hereditary. The Lords are hereditary, too, but the King or Queen may add to their number; they generally number about 450. The Commons are chosen by the people, 500 of them by the people of England and Wales, 53 by the people of Scotland, and 105 by the people of Ireland, making altogether 658. The House of Lords and the House of Commons are called the two Houses of Parliament. New measures may be proposed in either House, but none can become law except by consent of King or Queen, Lords, and Commons. The House of Commons has alone the privilege of granting or refusing supplies of money to the Government.

BRITISH EMPIRE.

64. **British Empire.**—The United Kingdom is less populous than Russia, Austria, and France, and smaller than these and three other European states, viz., Scandinavia, Spain, and Turkey in Europe. Yet it is the mightiest power at present on the face of the earth, and owns an empire which occupies one-seventh of the land on the globe, and contains a population little inferior to that of all Europe. The countries and stations that make up the British Empire are scattered over the whole world. A summary of them is subjoined:—

In Europe.

The British Isles,	29,000,000
Heligoland,	10,000
Gibraltar,	15,000
Carry forward,	29,025,000

63.—1. In what four parts of the United Kingdom are Celtic dialects spoken? 2. How do the English, Scotch, and Irish differ as to religion? 3. Of what three elements does the British Constitution consist? 4. Which of them proposes no new measures? 5. Which of them votes all the money? 6. State, in round numbers, how many members are sent to the House of Commons from England and Wales, Scotland, and Ireland respectively.

Brought forward,	29,025,000
Malta,	135,000
IN ASIA.	
India, including Ceylon, Pegu, Tenasserim, and the Eastern Settlements,	186,000,000
Hong-Kong,	120,000
Aden,	20,000
Labuan,	3,000
IN AFRICA.	
Sierra Leone,	45,000
Two Settlements on the Gambia,	5,000
Four Settlements on the Gold Coast,	160,000
Lagos,	6,000
Islands of St Helena and Ascension (sect. 168),	6,000
Mauritius and the Seychelles (sect. 168),	320,000
Cape Colony and Natal (sect. 167),	500,000
IN AMERICA.	
The Canadas,	2,500,000
New Brunswick,	250,000
Nova Scotia and Cape Breton,	330,000
Prince Edward's Island,	80,000
Newfoundland,	120,000
North-west Territory,	100,000
British Columbia and Vancouver's Island,	100,000
West Indies, including British Guiana,	1,100,000
Falkland Islands,	500
IN OCEANIA.	
Australia,	1,200,000
Van Diemen's Land,	90,000
New Zealand,	155,000
	222,370,500

BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN EUROPE.

65.—*Heligoland* is a very small island off the mouth of the Elbe, inhabited by Frieslanders, who live by fishing and piloting. *Gibraltar* is a famous rocky stronghold in the south of Spain, commanding the entrance to the Mediterranean: the garrison usually consists of 3000 men; the town contains about 12,000 inhabitants. *Malta* is a low island, rocky, yet very fertile and densely peopled. Immense quantities of soil have

---

64.—1. Name the six European states which are larger than the United Kingdom. 2. Which three of these are also more populous than the United Kingdom? 3. Which one of Britain's foreign possessions contains far more than half the population of the whole empire?

been imported and laid upon the bare rock. The climate is dry and highly salubrious. The natives are Roman Catholics, and speak a mixture of Arabic and Italian; but Italian is the language of the educated classes. The capital, *Valetta*, is an elegant town, with an excellent harbour strongly fortified.

The IONIAN ISLANDS, which lie along the western shore of continental Greece, were formed in 1815 into an independent state under the protection of Great Britain. They are now incorporated with the Kingdom of Greece (sect. 117). The inhabitants are Greeks in race, language, and religion. *Corfu*, *Paxo*, *Santa Maura*, *Thiaki*, *Cephalonia*, *Zante*, and *Cerigo*, are the largest of the Ionian Islands. Corfu is the largest; and its chief town, also called *Corfu*, is the seat of the local Government. *Cephalonia* is the second largest and the most populous. *Zante* is the most fertile, and best cultivated. Dried currants are the principal export. *Cerigo* is the most backward: it pastures a few sheep and goats.

SCANDINAVIA, OR SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

Area, 292,700 square miles, 2½ times that of the British Isles.
Population, fully Five millions, nearly that of Ireland.

66. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The Scandinavian peninsula may be likened to a great wave which, after a long swell from the East, has raised its white crest in the Norwegian Alps, and then suddenly broken on the western shore. The Norwegian Alps separate Norway from Sweden as far south as latitude 63°; after that they lie wholly in Norway, which is not less mountainous than Switzerland. The Glommen is the only considerable river in Norway; all the others are but mountain torrents. The surface of Sweden descends towards the Baltic in a succession of terraces, which are marked by cataracts in the rivers. These terraces are for the most part level; and the southern-

---

65.—1. Name the only British possession in Europe which is not an island. 2. Give an account of Heligoland. 3. Give an account of Gibraltar. 4. Give an account of Malta. 5. Name the seven largest of the Ionian Islands. 6. In what three respects do the inhabitants resemble those of Greece? 7. Which island is the largest, and which the most populous? 8. Which is the most backward? 9. In what respect is Zante distinguished above the others? 10. In which of them is the capital situated? 11. What have been their political relations since 1815?

most part of Sweden, where the largest lakes occur, is low as well as level. Both Sweden and Norway are covered with pine-forests down to latitude 63°. Farther south are forests of beech and oak, cultivated fields, and a few towns. The climate, which is characterized by greater extremes on the Swedish than on the Norwegian side of the mountains (sect. 27), does not permit of agriculture north of latitude 63°.

67. NATURAL FEATURES—

Norwegian Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*Swedish Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Varanger Fiord.		
River Tana.		
Cape Nordkyn.		
North Cape.		
Mageroe Island.	Jokulsfeld.	
Loffoden Islands.	Lake Tornea.	River Tornea.
Maelstrom Whirlpool.	Lake Lulea.	River Lulea.
West Fiord.	Kolen.	Gulf of Bothnia.
Trondheim Fiord.	Dovrefeld.	River Angerman.
Hardanger Fiord.	Hardangerfeld.	River Dahl.
The Naze.		
Christiania Fiord.	Lake Maelar.	
River Glommen.	Lake Wener.	Gothland Island.
River Gotha.	Lake Wetter.	Oland Island.

68. TOWNS.—The forests, which yield timber, ashes, tar, and turpentine in abundance; the mines, which yield the best iron in the world; the fields, and the sea, employ the whole population of Sweden and Norway. The manufactures of both are inconsiderable. Hence the towns are few and small. As the population of Sweden is nearly three times that of Norway, so

---

66.—1. For what three circumstances is lat. 63° remarkable in Scandinavia? 2. Why should winter be milder in Norway than in Sweden? 3. Describe the surface of Sweden. 4. How do Sweden and Norway together resemble a breaking wave? 5. Which of them runs farthest north, and which of them farthest south?

67.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the most northerly point of the Norwegian mainland. 2. In what island is North Cape? 3. What river, flowing north, forms, in the upper part of its course, part of the boundary between Norway and Russia? 4. What river, flowing south, forms part of the boundary between Sweden and Russia? 5. What channels separate Sweden and Norway respectively from the mainland of Denmark? 6. Name the largest fiord between the Loffoden Islands and the Cape called the Naze. 7. Name the three principal lakes of Sweden, beginning with the one nearest Stockholm, and ending with the largest.

the towns of Sweden are about three times larger than those of Norway. The towns of Sweden are—

Stockholm, on the Baltic, the capital, . .	Pop. 112,000
Gottenburg, on the Cattegat, chief seat of commerce,	39,000
Norrkoping, on the Baltic, minor seat of commerce,	21,000
Malmoe, on the Sound, a fortress, . .	20,000
Carlscrona, on the Baltic, naval station, . .	16,000
Gefle, on the Gulf of Bothnia, . . .	11,000
Upsala, north of Stockholm, seat of a University,	Under 10,000
Fahlun, near the Dahl, capital of the chief mining district,	
Helsingborg, on the Sound, nearest point to Denmark, a ferry.	

The towns of Norway are—

Christiania, on the Skager Rack, the capital, .	Pop. 32,000
Bergen, on the North Sea, chief seat of commerce,	25,000
Trondheim, on the North Sea, the ancient capital,	14,000
Drammen, on the Dram, minor seat of commerce,	12,000
Christiansand, on the Skager Rack, ship-building,	8,000

69. INHABITANTS.—Sweden and Norway are united as England and Scotland were till 1707 (sect. 62), *i.e.*, they acknowledge the same king, but have separate parliaments, which meet respectively in the capitals of the two countries. That of Sweden is called the *Diet*, that of Norway is called the *Storthing*. The Swedes and Norwegians have lineage, language, and religion in common. They both belong to the Teutonic race (sect. 41); the dialects spoken are akin to Danish; the religion universally professed is Lutheran Protestantism. The people of both countries resemble the Scotch, being prone to intemperance, yet withal industrious and intelligent. It is rare to meet with an individual who cannot both read and write.

68.—1. What useful articles are furnished by the forests? 2. What sort of industry is it which leads to the formation of large towns (see sect. 48)? 3. Name the capitals of Sweden and Norway. 4. Name the chief commercial town in each country. 5. Name a minor seat of commerce in each.

69.—1. What have the Swedes and Norwegians in common? 2. What have they separate? 3. Wherein do they both resemble the Scotch?

COUNTRIES IN THE GREAT EUROPEAN PLAIN:

RUSSIA, PRUSSIA, DENMARK, HOLLAND.

RUSSIA.

Shape, a hexagon, the sides of which are formed respectively by the Arctic Ocean, the Baltic, Central Europe, the Black Sea and the Caucasus together, the Caspian and the River Ural together, and the Ural Mountains.

Area, 2,130,000 square miles, nearly eighteen times that of the British Isles.

Population, Sixty-seven millions, considerably more than twice the population of the British Isles.

70. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—Russia is both level and low (sect. 36). On all its land-frontiers there are mountains; but the highest ground within it is a range of hills called Valdai, which rise only 1100 feet above the sea-level, and but 500 feet above the country which surrounds them. These hills are situated a short distance north-west of Moscow, and occupy the summit of the Russian river system. From them descend the four slopes or basins, among which the whole country is divided, those, viz., of the Arctic Ocean, the Baltic, the Black Sea, and the Caspian. The rivers of Russia are the most considerable in Europe (sect. 40). The north-western corner of Russia, Lapland, is a rocky plateau; the north-eastern a huge wet bog; and the south-eastern a sandy waste up to the very base of the Caucasus. All the rest of the surface is pretty equally divided between forests and cultivated land. Moscow is in the very centre of the grain country; farther north forests prevail almost to the exclusion of agriculture. The climate is highly continental (sect. 25). The Gulf of Finland is wholly frozen over during half the year; and few winters pass without some ice being formed even in the bay of Odessa, on the northern shore of the Black Sea.

70.—1. Name the boundaries on each side of the Russian hexagon. 2. What three states lie along the side which is formed by central Europe? 3. What part of Russia is lower than the ocean (sect. 36)? 4. Name the four slopes which comprise the greater part of Russia. 5. Describe the hills from which these slopes descend. 6. Of what nature is the surface at the three most strongly marked corners of the Russian hexagon? 7. Which of the British Isles have the same latitude as St. Petersburg?

71. **Natural Features.**—The eastern and western frontiers are supposed to meet northwards in the Varanger Fiord, which separates Lapland from Norway; and southwards in Cape Abcheron, the eastern extremity of the Caucasus.

Western Frontier.	*Interior.*	*Eastern Frontier.*
River Tornea.	Lake Enara.	Spitzbergen Island.
Gulf of Bothnia.	Lake Saima.	White Sea.
Aland Islands.	Lake Onega.	Solovetskoi Islands.
Gulf of Finland.	Lake Ladoga.	River Onega.
River Neva.	Lake Biela.	River Dwina (northern).
Dago Island.		
Oesel Island.		River Mezene.
Gulf of Riga.	Lake Peipus.	Vaigatz Island.
River Dwina (southern)	Lake Ilmen.	Kolgouev Island.
Baltic Sea.	Valdai Hills.	River Petchora.
River Niemen.		Nova Zembla Island.
River Danube.		Ural Mountains.
Black Sea.		River Ural.
River Dniester.		Caspian Sea.
River Boug.		River Volga.
River Dnieper.		
Gulf of Perekop.		
Straits of Yenikaleh.		
Sea of Azov.		Gulf of Kouma.
Riven Don.		River Kouma.
River Kouban.	Mount Elburz.	River Terek.

72. **Industry.**—The occupations of the people in Russia are much the same as in Scandinavia (sect. 68). The best timber is supplied by a forest between the Niemen and the Southern Dwina; the most productive mines are in the Ural Mountains; the most fertile district is that called Ukraine, in the basin of the middle Dnieper. Of raw produce, as wood and corn, hemp and flax, hides and tallow, Russia has a superabundance; consequently her foreign trade is considerable, particularly with

---

71.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the four large rivers which flow northwards. 2. Which two of them fall into the White Sea? 3. Name the three large rivers which fall into the Caspian. 4. Distinguish the two Dwinas by the inlets into which they fall. 5. What three rivers fall into the Black Sea at Odessa Bay? 6. Into what seas do the Volga, the Boug, the Dnieper, the Dniester, and the Don respectively fall? 7. Name the largest, and the most northerly of the Russian lakes. 8. What large lake is immediately south of the Gulf of Finland? 9. What other large lake lies between that one and the Valdai Hills? 10. Name the gulf, the straits, and the sea which almost detach the Crimea from the Russian mainland. 11. From what countries do the Tornea and the Danube respectively separate Russia?

England, which has not raw produce enough of its own, and pays for the raw produce of other countries in manufactured articles. Shagreen, isinglass, and caviar are manufactures peculiar to Russia; her leather is reckoned the best in the world. Inland trade is carried on by means of great annual fairs, and is promoted by an extensive system of water communication. The rivers are so supplemented by canals, that the four seas which wash the shores of Russia communicate one with another. The three largest towns, however, are not places specially of trade, inland or foreign; they are political centres. The following list includes all the towns which have a population of 50,000 or upwards :—

St. Petersburg, .	520,000	Saratov, . .	64,000
Moscow, . .	336,000	Kiev, . . .	61,000
Warsaw, . .	163,000	Kasan, . . .	58,000
Odessa, . .	104,000	Toula, . . .	58,000
Kichinev, . .	86,000	Berditchev, . .	52,000
Riga, . . .	72,000	Wilna, . . .	51,000

73. CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER BASINS—

White Sea Slope.

Rivers.	*Towns.*	*For what remarkable.*
Northern Dwina, .	Archangel, .	Mart for Siberian produce.

Baltic Slope.

Neva, . . .	St. Petersburg, .	Present capital of Russia.
,, . . .	Cronstadt, .	Chief naval station.
Trib. of the Niemen,	Wilna, . .	Inhabited chiefly by Jews.
Southern Dwina, .	Riga, . .	Great foreign trade.
Vistula, . .	Warsaw, . .	Capital of Poland.
,, . . .	Lublin, . .	Three annual fairs.

Black Sea Slope.

Boug, . . .	Nicolaiev, .	A naval station.
Dnieper, . .	Kiev, . .	Great annual fair.
Don, . . .	Taganrog, . .	Seat of commerce.
On the Coast, .	Odessa, . .	Immense corn trade.
In the Crimea, .	Sevastopol, .	Taken by the allied French and British, 1855.

72.—1. Mention some of the raw produce exported by Russia. 2. What three articles are manufactured by her alone? 3. Where and what is the Ukraine? 4. Where is the best Russian timber obtained? 5. How many times more populous than St. Petersburg is London? 6. Why should there be an extensive trade between Russia and England?

73.—(See sect. 45.) 1. What commercial towns are at or near the mouths of the two Dwinas? 2. Also at or near the mouths of the Don and the Volga? 3. Name the chief naval station of Russia. 4. Show that the three largest towns

Caspian Basin.

Volga, . . .	Astracan, .	Great fishing station.
„ . . .	Saratov, . .	Transit trade.
„ . . .	Kasan, . .	Transit trade.
Confluence of the Oka with Volga,	Nijnei-Novgorod,	Greatest fair in the world: lasts ten weeks.
Moscow, trib. of Oka,	Moscow, . .	Ancient capital of Russia.
Upa, trib. of Oka,	Toula, . .	The Sheffield of Russia.

74. **Empire.**—The Russians are Slavonians (sect. 41), a strong and hardy race; they are implicitly obedient to their emperor, whose rule is absolute (sect. 15), and devotedly attached to their religion, which is, with few exceptions, that of the Greek Church. One hundred and fifty years ago, they owned no coast-line but that of the White Sea; and Archangel was their chief seaport. Now, they have harbours and large towns on three other seas; and, besides holding more territory in Europe than any other power, they have pushed their conquests through the whole breadth of Asia, and across Behring's Straits into America. The Russian empire now comprises one-half of Europe, one-third of Asia, and a small corner of America; altogether, one-seventh of the land on the globe (sect. 64). The subjoined figures show how the population of the Russian empire is divided among the three continents, and also among the various religions professed:—

In Europe, . .	67,000,000	Greek Church, .	58,000,000
In Asia, . .	7,000,000	Roman Catholics,	7,000,000
In America, . .	10,000	Protestants, . .	3,000,000
		Armenians, . .	1,000,000
		Jews, . . .	1,250,000
		Mohammedans, .	3,250,000
		Idolaters, . .	510,000
	74,010,000		74,010,000

(sect. 72) are political centres. 5. From what town would you expect the surplus corn of the Ukraine to be exported? 6. What town, having a great transit trade, occupies a central position with regard to Moscow, St. Petersburg, Archangel, Tobolsk (in Siberia), and Astracan? 7. On what river and its tributaries are the greatest number of towns situated?

74.—1. In what respect are the Russian and British empires about equal? 2. In what respect does the British empire surpass the Russian? 3. What is the government and what the religion of the Russians? 4. Sketch the great progress which the Russian empire has made in recent times. 5. In what quarter of the world does the strength of the Russian empire lie?

PRUSSIA.

Area, 108,000 square miles, twice that of England and Wales. Population, Eighteen millions, 2 millions less than that of England and Wales.

75. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The kingdom of Prussia consists of two territories detached from each other, one of them sloping from the Riesengebirge towards the Baltic, and the other towards the German Ocean. The former may be called Baltic Prussia, and is drained by the Niemen, the Pregel, the Vistula, the Oder, and the Elbe; the latter may be called Rhenish Prussia, because it is traversed by the Rhine, and consists of the Rhine province properly so called, and of Westphalia. Baltic Prussia belongs wholly to the great plain of Europe (sect. 36): marshes are frequent near the coast, and sandy heaths in the interior. Rhenish Prussia is divided between the great plain of Europe and a mountainous region, which begins a short way above Cologne, and continues southwards as far as Rhenish Prussia extends. The river scenery, from Bonn to Coblentz, is unsurpassed for picturesque beauty. The same district is also remarkable as the most northerly in which the vine flourishes, and wine is manufactured. Rhenish Prussia does not reach the sea. On the coast of Baltic Prussia are three large sea-lakes, called Haffs; and three considerable islands, Rugen, Usedom, and Wollin.

76. INDUSTRY.—The linen manufacture is extensive on the Upper Oder, in the province of Silesia. Coal and iron are most abundant in Rhenish Prussia, and there accordingly manufactures are carried on with the greatest activity; woollen and cotton are the chief. Berlin, the capital, has acquired a name for beautiful china, and fine metal castings. Still, Prussian

---

75.—1. How many times more densely peopled than Prussia is England and Wales? 2. What kingdom intervenes between Baltic and Rhenish Prussia? 3. Name the empire bounding Baltic Prussia on the east, the empire and kingdom bounding it on the south, and the duchy bounding it on the north-west? 4. Which of the three largest rivers of Baltic Prussia lies almost wholly within it? 5. What two kingdoms bound Rhenish Prussia on the west? 6. What country in Europe extends between nearly the same parallels as Prussia? 7. Name the five rivers which traverse Baltic Prussia. 8. What part of Prussia does not belong to the great plain of Europe? 9. Mention two notable circumstances about the valley of the Rhine. 10. Name the three Haffs on the coast of Baltic Prussia. 11. Name the three islands which lie off the Grosse Haff.

industry is mainly agricultural. On this account the towns, though numerous, are small compared with those of highly manufacturing countries like England. The following list contains all the towns with a population of 50,000 and upwards :—

Berlin, . . .	525,000	Dantzic, . .	72,000
Breslau, . .	139,000	Aix-la-Chapelle, .	59,000
Cologne, . .	113,000	Stettin, . .	58,000
Königsberg, . .	87,000	Elberfeld, . .	56,000
Magdeburg, . .	79,000	Crefeld, . .	51,000

77. CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER-BASINS—

PREGEL, ...	Königsberg, capital of East Prussia.
VISTULA, ...	Dantzic, capital of West Prussia.
ODER, ...	Stettin, capital of Pomerania.
,, ...	Frankfort, great transit trade.
,, ...	Breslau, capital of Silesia.
WARTHA, trib. of the Oder,	Posen, capital of Posen or Prussian Poland.
ELBE, ...	Magdeburg, capital of Prussian Saxony.
HAVEL, trib. of the Elbe,	Potsdam, favourite royal residence.
SPREE, trib. of the Havel,	Berlin, capital of Brandenburg, and of all Prussia.
AA, ...	Munster, capital of Westphalia.
RHINE, ...	Cologne, magnificent Gothic cathedral.
,, ...	Bonn, famous University.
,, ...	Coblentz, opposite the great fortress of Ehrenbreitstein.
WUPPER, trib. of the Rhine,	Elberfeld, extensive cotton manufactures.
RUHR, trib. of the Rhine,	Aix-la-Chapelle, capital of the empire under Charlemagne.

The seven provinces, into which Baltic Prussia is divided, appear in the above list. East Prussia, West Prussia, and Posen do not belong to Germany; the other provinces of Baltic Prussia and all Rhenish Prussia do.

76.—1. Where are the linen and cotton manufactures respectively most active? 2. For what articles is Berlin famed? 3. Name three of the larger towns which stand at the mouths of rivers. 4. Name the four large towns which belong to Rhenish Prussia.

77.—(See sect. 37.) 1. Name the three maritime provinces of Prussia. 2. Name the three commercial towns which are their capitals. 3. At the mouths of what rivers do these three towns respectively stand? 4. What provinces are traversed respectively by the Pregel, the Vistula, and the Elbe? 5. What three provinces are traversed by the Oder? 6. What province of Baltic Prussia is traversed by no principal river, but only by a tributary? 7. Name the four provinces of Baltic Prussia which belong to Germany. 8. What three do not?

78. INHABITANTS.—Excepting in Posen, where Slavonians preponderate, and Jews abound, the inhabitants of Prussia belong to the Teutonic race (sect. 41). They are an honest and plodding people. In Baltic Prussia, the Protestants are to the Roman Catholics, and in Rhenish Prussia, the Roman Catholics are to the Protestants, as two to one. The royal family is Protestant; and Prussia is reckoned a Protestant power. The language and literature of Prussia are those of Germany in general. The Government, which is a limited monarchy (sect. 15), has made ample provision for the education of all according to their rank; and parents who do not send their children to school, are taken up by the police, and fined.

DENMARK.

Area, 21,980, square miles, equal to two-thirds that of Scotland.

Population, fully Two and half a millions, half a million less than that of Scotland.

79. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—Denmark consists of a peninsula, shaped on the whole like a horned moon, of which the Skaw is the northern tip; and of several large islands in the hollow of the peninsula, of which the largest are Zealand and Funen. Sand-hills line all its coasts; and one-half of the interior consists of sandy heaths and small lakes.

80. INDUSTRY.—Denmark is a purely agricultural and grazing country. It has neither forests nor mines; and its manufactures are inconsiderable. Except during several of the winter months, when the Baltic is closed to navigation by ice, commerce is active, and all the more so along the coast, because the roads in the interior are bad. *Altona*, the second city

---

78.—1. In what province do most of the inhabitants belong to the same race as the Russians? 2. Where do Roman Catholics preponderate? 3. Where do Jews abound? 4. Do the majority of Prussians belong to the same race (sect. 63) with the British?

79.—1. Whether is Denmark or Scotland the more densely peopled country? 2. Name the point in which the Danish peninsula terminates northwards, and the sea channels on either side of it. 3. What two German states bound the Danish peninsula southwards? 4. Name the land on either side of the Sound, and of each belt.

in respect of population, is, commercially, one with Hamburg: but by far the largest city in the kingdom is the capital, *Copenhagen*, situated in the island of Zealand, on the Sound.

Copenhagen,	155,000	Kiel, . .	18,000	Aarhuus, .	11,000
Altona, . .	46,000	Odensee, .	14,000	Rendsburg,	11,000
Flensburg,	20,000	Schleswig,	12,000	Aalborg, .	10,000

81. Inhabitants.—In the Baltic islands, and in Jutland, which together constitute Denmark proper, the population and the language are Danish. In the Duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg, which, though attached to the Danish crown, belong to the German confederation (sect. 90), the inhabitants are German, both by race and language. In the Duchy of Schleswig, the population is mixed. Both Danes and Germans belong to the Teutonic race (sect. 41); and both profess Lutheran Protestantism. The government is a limited monarchy (sect. 15). The royal power is checked by diets held in each of the five provinces above mentioned. In respect of character and education, the Danes resemble the Swedes and Norwegians (sect. 69).

82. Foreign Possessions.—These are, in Europe, Iceland, and the Faroe Islands; in America, portions of the west coast of Greenland (sect. 173); and, in the West Indies (sect. 199), the islands of Santa Cruz, St. Thomas, and St. John. The most interesting of all these is Iceland, with its burning mountain, Hecla, 5000 feet high, and its boiling fountains, called Geysers, which throw up jets of water to the height of 200 feet. Notwithstanding its name and latitude, the winters of Iceland are not more severe than those of Jutland (sect. 25, 27). The sea along its southern shore was frozen only four times in the course of the eighteenth century; and on none of these occasions was the ice more than a foot thick. The 50,000 inhabitants of Iceland speak the purest existing dialect of Gothic, the primi-

---

80.—1. Trace the 55th parallel through Denmark to Great Britain, and compare the climates of the two countries. 2. How many towns with a population of 10,000 and upwards are there in Denmark and Scotland (sect. 54) respectively? 3. What makes the great difference?

81.—1. Name the four peninsular provinces from the south northwards. 2. Which of them has no sea-board? 3. Which of them is purely Danish? 4. How is the King of Denmark's power limited? 5. Wherein do the Danes resemble the Scotch?

tive language from which are derived Danish, Swedish, Norwegian, German, Dutch, Flemish, and English, in short, all the languages of the Teutonic race (sect. 41).

HOLLAND.

Shape, a rhomboid, the longer sides running north and south.
Area, 13,610 square miles, less than half that of Scotland.
Population, Three and a half millions, somewhat more than that of Scotland.

83. Bird's-eye View.—Holland is throughout level and low. In many parts the surface is lower than the adjacent river, or the sea at high water (sect. 36), and strong embankments alone save it from inundation. The whole country is intersected by water channels ; the principal are the estuary of the Scheldt, the Meuse with its tributaries, and the Rhine with its branches, one of which communicates with the Yssel. The prevalent landscape is one of green meadows, separated from one another, not by hedges or walls, but by water, and dotted over with windmills ; at the northern and southern extremities of the western frontier, the meadows are supplanted by extensive barren bogs, which furnish the universal fuel, peat. Half of Luxemburg, on the Moselle, though belonging to Germany, is attached to the crown of Holland.

84. Industry.—The two maritime provinces, lying between the estuary of the Scheldt and the Zuyder Zee, and called respectively North and South Holland, are a perfect hive of industry. They contain about one-third of the whole popula-

---

82.—1. Name the Danish possessions in Europe. 2. Give two reasons (sect. 25, 27) for the Icelandic winter being comparatively mild. 3. Name seven languages derived from the Icelandic. 4. By what race are they all spoken? 5. Mention two wonderful natural phenomena in Iceland. 6. Name the three West Indian islands which belong to Denmark.

83.—1. How many times more densely peopled than Scotland is Holland? 2. What is the main feature in a Dutch landscape? 3. Name the three principal rivers, the mouths of which overspread the country? 4. Name the four largest islands at the mouth of the Zuyder Zee. 5. What province lies partly south of the Scheldt? 6. What three provinces border with Belgium? 7. By what three kingdoms is Holland bounded on the land side?

tion, and all the towns with a population of more than 30,000, except *Utrecht* and *Groningen*. The following is a list of all the towns which have a population of 30,000 or upwards:—

Amsterdam, on the Zuyder Zee, capital of North Holland,	263,000
Rotterdam, on the Meuse, capital of South Holland, .	111,000
The Hague, near the coast, seat of government, . .	83,000
Utrecht, on the Old Rhine, seat of a university, . .	56,000
Leyden, on the Old Rhine, seat of a university, . .	37,000
Groningen, on the Hunse, seat of a university, . .	36,000
Haarlem, in North Holland, tulips and bleachfields, .	30,000

The position of Holland at the mouth of the Rhine makes her the natural purveyor of colonial produce to a great part of Germany: commerce accordingly is a great source of her prosperity. *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam* are its chief seats. Her own manufactures are limited. The town of *Delft*, in South Holland, gives name to a kind of earthenware; but its potteries have declined. *Schiedam*, in the same province, is still famous for gin, called *Hollands;* and the linen cloth, called *Holland*, is still extensively manufactured. Owing to the moistness of the climate (sect. 43), dairy produce is that in which Holland excels. Corn is imported, but butter and cheese are exported in immense quantities. The cheese goes generally by the name of *Gouda*, a town in South Holland.

85. INHABITANTS.—The Dutch belong to the Teutonic race (sect. 41), and are remarkable for perseverance and economy; also for smoking and tea-drinking. Two-thirds of them are Protestants. Their government is a limited monarchy (sect. 15). Education is universally diffused.

86. FOREIGN POSSESSIONS.—These are—

IN ASIA—Java; parts of Sumatra, Borneo, and Celebes; Amboyna, Banca, half of Timor, and most of the smaller islands in the Oriental Archipelago (sect. 202).

IN AFRICA—Some stations on the coast of Guinea.

IN AMERICA—Part of Guiana (sect. 189), and several of the smaller West India islands (sect. 199).

84.—1. Mention two facts which show that the provinces of North and South Holland surpass all the others in point of industry. 2. Name the three university towns. 3. Name the two most commercial towns. 4. What two towns give name to articles in common use? 5. What are the two chief sources of wealth to the Dutch? 6. Distinguish the articles called respectively *Holland* and *Hollands*.

85.—1. What is stated regarding the character and habits of the Dutch?

These foreign possessions, especially those in the Oriental Archipelago, have greatly promoted the foreign trade of Holland, which is inferior only to that of Great Britain.

COUNTRIES DIVIDED BETWEEN THE GREAT PLAIN AND THE MOUNTAINOUS REGION:

BELGIUM—GERMANY.

BELGIUM.

Shape, a truncated pyramid, with its base resting on France, and its truncated top rising into Holland.

Area, 11,373 sq. miles, somewhat more than a third that of Scotland.

Population, fully Four and a half millions, 1½ million more than that of Scotland.

87.—Bird's-eye View.—That half of Belgium which occupies the basin of the Scheldt and its tributaries, is a continuation of the flats of Holland (sect. 83). The inland half, *i.e.*, the portion drained by the Meuse and its tributaries, is hilly and well wooded. The scenery of the Mèuse itself, between the towns of Liege and Namur, competes with the best on the Rhine (sect. 75). The flat provinces are East and West Flanders, Antwerp, Limburg, South Brabant, and part of Hainault. The hilly provinces are Liege, Luxemburg, Namur, and part of Hainault.

88. Industry.—Compared with Holland, Belgium is more of an agricultural, and less of a grazing country; more highly manufacturing, but much less commercial. Its only commercial town is *Antwerp*. *Ostend*, the nearest port to England, is an inconsiderable place. Manufactures of soft goods are

---

86.—1. Name the four largest islands of the Oriental Archipelago in which the Dutch have settlements.

87.—1. Name Scotland, Holland, and Belgium in order, according to density of population, beginning with the most densely peopled. 2. Contrast physically the basin of the Scheldt and its tributaries, with the basin of the Meuse and its tributaries. 3. Name the only province bounded by the sea. 4. What two provinces are divided between Belgium and Holland? 5. Which is the central province? 6. By what three kingdoms is Belgium bounded on the land side?

distributed over the whole country; those of hardware are confined to the basin of the Meuse, where are also to be found most of the coal and iron mines. The following is a list of all the towns having a population of 20,000 or upwards:—

Brussels, on trib. of the Scheldt, the capital,	178,000
Ghent, on the Scheldt, cotton manufacture,	120,000
Antwerp, on the Scheldt, chief port,	115,000
Liege, on the Meuse, hardware manufacture,	98,000
Bruges, situated inland, great canal centre,	50,000
Malines, on trib. of the Scheldt, great railway centre,	34,000
Louvain, on trib. of the Scheldt, breweries,	32,000
Tournay, on the Scheldt, carpet manufacture,	31,000
Verviers, on trib. of Meuse, woollen cloth manufacture,	29,000
Mons, on trib. of the Scheldt, coal-fields,	27,000
Namur, on the Meuse, iron-works,	26,000
Courtray, on trib. of Scheldt, fine linen manufacture,	23,000

The famous *Waterloo* is a small village in South Brabant, due south of Brussels.

89. INHABITANTS.—The Belgians are, in race, language, and character, as well as in position, intermediate between the Dutch and the French. They are of mixed Teutonic and Celtic blood. In that part of Belgium which resembles Holland physically, the humbler classes speak a dialect called Flemish, which is akin to Dutch; elsewhere, the humbler classes speak an old-fashioned sort of French, called Walloon; but modern French is everywhere the language of the press and of polite conversation. Dutch steadiness is enlivened in the Belgian by somewhat of the Frenchman's gaiety. The Belgians are almost all Roman Catholics. Education is by no means so widely diffused as in Holland. The government is a limited monarchy (sect. 15).

88.—1. In what two respects does Belgium surpass Holland? 2. In what two respects is Belgium surpassed by Holland? 3. What towns have respectively the same manufactures as Manchester and Birmingham? 4. In what two towns do the canals and railways of Belgium respectively meet? 5. Name the only three considerable towns in the basin of the Meuse and its tributaries.

89.—1. By whom are Flemish, Walloon, and French respectively spoken? 2. In what four particulars are the Belgians intermediate between the Dutch and the French? 3. Compare Belgium with Holland in respect of religion and education.

GERMANY.

Area, 243,000 square miles, twice that of the British Isles.
Population, nearly Forty-four millions, one and a half times that of the British Isles.

90. Bird's-eye View.—Portions of Germany belong to kingdoms already noticed (sections 77, 81, 83). Besides these, it includes one-third of the Austrian Empire (sect. 95), and thirty-two minor independent states, from the kingdom of Bavaria, which is nearly as large as Ireland, to the principality of Lichtenstein, which is of less compass than many an English nobleman's estate, and contains only about 15,000 inhabitants. In fact, Germany is the designation of that large portion of Europe where the German race and language prevail. It is pretty equally divided between the great plain and the mountainous region of Europe; those provinces which belong to the great plain being called Lower Germany, and those which belong to the mountainous region, Upper Germany. Prussia is the leading power, and Protestantism the prevalent religion, in the former; Austria is the leading power, and Roman Catholicism the prevalent religion, in the latter. The Germanic Confederation, which provides for the external defence of all Germany, holds its diets at Frankfort-on-the-Maine. The Germans, notwithstanding their many particular nationalities, have a common character. They are an earnest, upright, and industrious people. Education, including music, is universally diffused among them; and their universities draw more students from foreign parts than any others in the world.

91. Minor States.—The independent minor states of Germany may be divided into three groups, viz., the Hanoverian, most of which belongs to the great plain of Europe; the Bavarian, which belongs wholly to the mountainous region; and the Saxon, intermediate between the other two, and belonging partly to the great plain, and partly to the mountainous region. These groups are named from the most important member in each, viz., the three kingdoms of Hanover, Bavaria, and

---

90.—1. To what three kingdoms, already noticed, do portions of Germany belong? 2. Name the two most influential members in the Germanic Confederation. 3. What is Germany? 4. On what ground is it divided into Upper and Lower? 5. Sketch the German character.

Saxony. Protestantism prevails in the Hanoverian and Saxon groups; Roman Catholicism in the Bavarian. The kingdom of Wirtemberg is the only member of the Bavarian group in which Protestants have the majority.

(*a.*) The Hanoverian or northern group comprises the basin of the lower Weser, together with a portion of the Baltic shore, where the two Mecklenburg grand duchies lie. To this group belongs the duchy of Brunswick, which gives name to the present reigning house of Great Britain and Ireland. The chief employments of the people are agriculture and grazing, except among the Harz mountains, in the extreme south of Hanover, where mining employs a large population.

(*b.*) The Bavarian or southern group comprises the basin of the Upper Danube, the whole basin of the Neckar, and the right bank of the Rhine, between which and the Black Forest lies the grand duchy of Baden. Agriculture and vine husbandry are the chief occupations.

(*c.*) The Saxon or intermediate group comprises the basin of the upper Elbe and Weser, together with a portion of the Rhine valley, containing the duchy of Nassau and the grand duchy of Hesse-Darmstadt. In this group lies the duchy of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, to the reigning house of which Prince Albert, consort of Queen Victoria, belonged. Agriculture, grazing, and mining are the chief emplyments, except in Saxony, where manufactures prevail, and along the Rhine, where the grand occupation is vine husbandry.

92. TOWNS.—The towns are numerous, but not large. Only three of them have a population of 100,000 or upwards, viz., *Hamburg*, *Munich*, *Dresden*. The following is a list of the more important:—

91.—1. Mention any minor states of Germany which are not independent, because attached to some non-German power. 2. Name, from south to north, the three groups of minor states. 3. Which group has no territory on the Rhine? 4. Name the chief rivers of that group. 5. Name the three chief rivers of the Saxon group. 6. Name the three chief rivers of the Bavarian group. 7. Where are the Harz mountains and the Black Forest respectively? 8. Which is the most highly manufacturing of the minor states? 9. With which two of them is the present royal family of Great Britain connected? 10. In which two of the groups does Protestantism prevail? 11. Wherein does the kingdom of Wirtemberg differ from the other members of the Bavarian group?

Hanoverian Group.

Free Town of Hamburg, chief commercial town in Germany,	176,000
Free Town of Bremen, second commercial town in Germany,	67,000
Free Town of Lubeck, minor seat of commerce, . . .	32,000
Kingdom of Hanover, Hanover, the capital, . . .	71,000
Duchy of Brunswick, Brunswick, the capital, . . .	42,000

Saxon Group.

Kingdom of Saxony, Dresden, the capital, ...	128,000
" " Leipsic, great fairs, and chief seat of the book trade, ...	78,000
Grand Duchy of Hesse-Darmstadt, Mentz, a strong fortress,	41,000
Free town of Frankfort, great fairs, and chief money-market in Germany, ...	76,000

Bavarian Group.

Kingdom of Bavaria, .	Munich, the capital, . . .	148,000
" "	Nuremberg, great toy-mart, .	63,000
" "	Augsburg, second money-market,	45,000
" "	Ratisbon, ancient seat of the Diet,	29,000
Kingdom of Wirtemberg,	Stuttgart, the capital, . .	56,000
" "	Ulm, transit trade, . . .	23,000
Grand Duchy of Baden,	Carlsruhe, the capital, . .	27,000
" "	Mannheim, a steamboat station,	27,000
" "	Heidelberg, a university town, .	16,000

For a classification of these towns according to the river basins, see sect. 125.

COUNTRIES IN THE MOUNTAINOUS REGION OF EUROPE:

AUSTRIA, FRANCE, SPAIN, PORTUGAL, SWITZERLAND, ITALY, GREECE, TURKEY.

AUSTRIA.

Area, 246,000 square miles, fully twice that of the British Isles.

Population, Thirty-five millions, one and one-fourth
times that of the British Isles.

93. Bird's-eye View.—Through the heart of the Austrian Empire flows the Danube, the banks of which spread out into

---

92.—1. Name the three largest towns. 2. Name the four free towns. 3. Name the two chief commercial towns. 4. Name the two chief money markets. 5.

the immense plain of Hungary. The valley of the Danube is enclosed towards the north by the Carpathian mountain-system, and towards the south by the eastern Alps. North of the Carpathians lies the plain of Galicia, sloping towards the Baltic; and south of the Alps lies the Venetian plain, sloping towards the Adriatic. The Austrian empire thus consists of two nearly parallel mountain regions, enclosing a great central plain, and flanked by two smaller plains, one towards the north-east, and another towards the south-west. The two mountain regions are extensive. In the east of the Tyrol, which is another Switzerland in respect of scenery, the Alps send off two branches, viz., the Noric Alps, in the direction of Vienna, and the Carnic Alps (sect. 120), towards Dalmatia and Turkey. The highest summit, the Ortler Spitze (12,811 feet), is in the Tyrolese Alps. The Carpathians, beginning at Orsova, where the Danube leaves the Austrian territory, first form an elbow eastwards, and then run towards the north-west, enclosing at length, under various names, the kingdom of Bohemia. These mountain ranges, by making the carriage of goods from one province to another very expensive, are great obstructions to the internal trade of the country.

94. INDUSTRY.—Agriculture is the leading employment. Its produce varies with the climate, which is threefold. The provinces north of the Carpathians have the climate of northern

---

Name the capitals of the four kingdoms among the minor states, viz., Hanover, Saxony, Bavaria, and Wirtemberg. 6. Name the two towns where large fairs are held. 7. What two towns are famed respectively for books and toys?

93.—1. What two mountain ranges divide the Austrian Empire into three parts? 2. Name the three seas towards which these three parts respectively slope. 3. What province belongs to the great northern plain? 4. What province occupies the eastward elbow of the Carpathians? 5. What province is all but surrounded by offshoots from the Carpathians? 6. What river flows out of this province by the single gap in its mountainous frontier? 7. What two provinces are watered by the Danube? 8. Name the two chief tributaries received by the Danube in Hungary? 9. What tributary does the Danube receive where it enters the Austrian dominions, and what town is situated where it leaves them? 10. What tributary of the Danube separates Austria from Turkey for a greater distance than the Danube itself? 11. Name four principal rivers of Europe which rise in the Carpathians, or in their offshoots. 12. What province do the Carpathian mountains separate from Turkey? 13. Name the two largest provinces which they separate from one another. 14. In what direction do the Noric and Carnic Alps respectively spread themselves? 15. What Italian river rises in the Tyrol?

Europe, which does not admit of the vine (sect. 24). The Venetian plain, south of the Alps, has the climate of southern Europe, which favours the growth of silk, and admits the cultivation of rice. The intermediate provinces have the climate of central Europe, and are pre-eminently a land of wheat and wine. Austria is richer in ores than any other country in Europe. The most famous mines are, the gold mines of Transylvania, the quicksilver mines of Illyria, the iron mines of Styria, and the tin mines of Bohemia. Iron, the most useful of all these metals, is not very extensively worked, nor are Austrian manufactures of any kind extensive. Bohemia is the most highly manufacturing province, and Bohemian glass is particularly esteemed. The linens of Bohemia, Moravia, and Silesia, the woollens of the two former, and the silks of Venice, can compete with those of any other country. The foreign trade of Austria is inconsiderable, and her only seaports are *Trieste* and *Venice*, at the head of the Adriatic. The Danube is the great commercial highway (sect. 120). Steamers ply upon it throughout its whole course in Austrian territory, and keep central Europe in direct communication with the Black Sea, the Archipelago, and the Levant.

95. TOWNS.—Only four towns have a population exceeding 100,000. These are, *Vienna*, the capital of the empire ; *Prague*, the capital of Bohemia ; *Buda-Pesth*, the capital of Hungary, and *Venice*.

(*a.*) *German States, pop.* 12½ *millions.*

1. Archduchy of Austria,	Vienna, on the Danube, pop. 560,000.
2. Kingdom of Bohemia,	Prague, on the Moldau, pop. 150,000.
3. Duchy of Silesia, . .	Troppau, on trib. of the Oder, linens and woollens.
4. Margraviate of Moravia,	Brunn, on the Schwarza, woollens and dyeing.
5. Duchy of Styria, . .	Gratz, on the Muhr, the capital.
6. Kingdom of Illyria, .	Trieste, on the Adriatic, chief seaport.
7. County of Tyrol, . .	Innspruck, on the Inn, picturesque valley.

94.—1. In what large province does the vine not grow? 2. Name the single province in which rice is cultivated. 3. What metals are found in Transylvania, Illyria, Styria, and Bohemia respectively? 4. What provinces are famed for glass and silk respectively? 5. What three provinces have extensive linen manufactures? 6. What two provinces have extensive woollen manufactures? 7. Name the only two seaports in the Austrian empire.

(*b.*) *Polish States, pop.* 5½ *millions.*

1. **Galicia,**	Cracow, on the Vistula, ancient capital of Poland.
2. **Buckowina,**	No town of 10,000 inhabitants.

(*c.*) *Hungarian States, pop.* 15 *millions.*

1. Kingdom of Hungary,	Buda-Pesth, on the Danube, pop. 130,000.
2. Principality of Transylvania.	Klausenburg, on trib. of the Theiss, the capital.
3. The Military Frontier,	Divided into four generalates.
4. Kingdom of Dalmatia,	Zara, on the Adriatic, the capital.

(*d.*) *Venetian Territory, pop.* 2½ *millions* (sect. 96, 114).

96. INHABITANTS.—The following table shows how the population is distributed, in respect of race and religion:—

Races.		*Religions.*	
Germans, . .	8,000,000	Roman Catholics, .	24,750,000
Slaves, . . .	15,000,000	United Greeks, .	3,500,000
Roumani, . .	6,300,000	Greek Church, .	2,750,000
Magyars, . .	5,000,000	Protestants, . .	3,500,000
Jews, . . .	700,000	Hebrews, . .	500,000
	35,000,000		35,000,000

The German is by far the most enlightened of these races, and is distributed throughout the whole empire. Slaves, a denomination which includes the Poles, are found in all the provinces, except Tyrol and Venice; the Roumani abound in eastern Hungary, Transylvania, and Buckowina, and speak a corrupt Latin; the Italian subjects of Austria are included along with the Roumani in the above enumeration; the Magyars are confined to Hungary and Transylvania; they speak a language akin to the Finnish, and are of Mongolian origin (sect. 41). The Roman Catholic is the state-religion, even in the eastern provinces of the empire, where the majority belong to the Greek Church. The united Greeks differ from the Greek Church by acknowledging the Pope of Rome as their spiritual head. Most of the Protestant communities are in Hungary. The Government is an absolute monarchy (sect. 15), and is in constant danger, from the discontent of Hungary and Venice. The Italian subjects of Austria wish to transfer their allegiance to an Italian power; Hungary is content to form part of the

---

95.—1. Name the three largest towns after the capital. 2. To which class of states does the most highly manufacturing province belong?

Austrian empire, but demands her ancient constitution which Austria forcibly took away.

FRANCE.

Shape, a hexagon, of which three sides are bounded by water, and three sides by land.

Area, 208,000 sq. miles, about two-thirds larger than the British Isles.

Population, fully Thirty-seven millions, nearly one and a third times that of the British Isles.

97. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The Cevennes mountains mark the summit of the water-shed between the Atlantic and the Mediterranean. Beginning near the eastern extremity of the Pyrenees, they run along the valley of the Rhone and Saone, towards the sources of the Meuse and Moselle, where they spread out into the Ardennes, and communicate with the Vosges. North of the Cevennes lies a narrow frontier-district, which slopes along the Moselle, the Meuse, and the Scheldt, towards the German Ocean. East of them lie Alsace, which slopes from the Vosges mountains to the Rhine; and the long narrow valley of the Saone and Rhone, which slopes towards the Mediterranean, with the Cevennes on the one side, the Jura mountains and the Alps on the other. West of the Cevennes lies the far greater part of France, sloping towards the Atlantic, and divided into three basins, that of the Seine opening on the English Channel, those of the Loire and Garonne on the Bay of Biscay. The water-sheds of these three rivers are broad and gentle elevations; and the only hills in this great western slope, worthy to be called mountains, are near the sources of the Loire in Auvergne, where the groups of Cantal and Mont d'Or cover an extensive district. The surface of France is as varied as that of England; but whilst the mountainous districts of England lie in the west and north, those of France lie in the east and south. Corsica, the only

---

96.—1. Whether does the Austrian empire or Scotland contain the greater number of Protestants? 2. In what two respects is the German race distinguished above the others? 3. To what great races mentioned in sect. 41 do the Poles and Magyars respectively belong? 4. What distinguishes the United Greeks from others? 5. What two provinces are discontented with the Government? 6. What do the inhabitants of these provinces respectively want?

large island belonging to France, is exceedingly mountainous; Monte Rotondo, the highest peak, is 10,000 feet high.

98. NATURAL FEATURES—

West of the Cevennes.

Cape Gris Nez.
River Canche.
,, Somme.
,, Seine.
Cape La Hogue.
Ushant Island.
Belle-isle.
River Loire.
Noirmoutier Island.
River Charente.
Mont d'Or.
Bay of Biscay.
River Garonne.
,, Adour.

East of the Cevennes.

River Scheldt.
,, Meuse.
,, Moselle.
,, Rhine.
Vosges mountains.

Jura ,,
River Saone.
,, Rhone.
Mont Blanc.
Hières Islands.
Gulf of Lyons.

99. INDUSTRY.—The majority of the inhabitants are engaged in agriculture, the produce of which includes the three great staples, corn, wine, and oil. If two lines be imagined, one running from the mouth of the Loire to where the Rhine leaves France; and the other, from the mouth of the Garonne to where the Rhone enters it, the whole country will be divided into three regions. The northern is specially the corn region; the southern specially the oil region; and the central specially the wine region. Mining industry is not extensive; great quantities of coal are imported from Belgium; but wood is the fuel most extensively used. The manufactures of France are various and important. That of silk is the most extensive; its chief seat is *Lyons*, at the junction of the Saone and Rhone.

97.—1. Name the two mountain ranges and the river which bound France on the east. 2. Name the waters which wash the three coast-sides of the hexagon formed by France? 3. Name the five countries which bound France on the three land-sides of the hexagon. 4. What three rivers, falling into the German Ocean, or into larger rivers which do, take their rise in France? 5. Name the three largest rivers which fall into the Atlantic. 6. Which of the two, the Rhone or the Saone, rises in France? 7. In how many directions does the drainage of France flow? 8. Towards what quarter does the greater part of France slope? 9. By what mountains is the valley of the Rhone and Saone shut in, on either side? 10. Compare France and England in respect of mountains and plains.

98.—(See sect. 46.) 1. What cape is nearest to England? 2. South-west of what cape are the Channel Islands? 3. Between what two islands does the Loire enter the sea? 4. Name the only river of France which forms a delta.

South-west from Lyons is *St. Etienne*, the chief seat of metallic manufactures. The woollen, linen, and cotton manufactures are all confined to the north-western region. *Rouen*, on the Seine, is the chief seat of the cotton manufacture; that of linen prevails in the towns of French Flanders, as *Lille*, *Valenciennes*, *Cambray;* the woollen manufacture is more widely diffused. *Paris* itself excels all the cities of the world in the manufacture of jewellery, and of fancy articles in general. Internal trade is greatly promoted by the five great rivers, the Seine, the Loire, the Garonne, the Rhone, and the Rhine, which, besides being themselves navigable for great distances, are all connected by canals. Foreign trade is but moderate. Its chief seats are at or near the mouths of the four great French rivers, viz., *Havre*, at the mouth of the Seine; *Nantes*, near the mouth of the Loire; *Bordeaux*, at the mouth of the Garonne; and *Marseilles*, on the coast, near the mouths of the Rhone.

100. POLITICAL DIVISIONS.—Anciently, France was divided into thirty-six provinces of very unequal size. Of these, it is still necessary to be acquainted with the following:—

Provinces.	*Where situated.*	*For what remarkable.*
FRENCH FLANDERS,	On the Straits of Dover,	Basin of the Scheldt.
ARTOIS, ...	,, ,,	Artesian wells.
ALSACE, ...	On the Rhine, . .	German prevails.
NORMANDY, . . .	On the Lower Seine,	William the Conqueror.
CHAMPAGNE, . . .	On the Upper Seine and Marne.	Champagne wine.
BRITTANY, . . .	Between the English Channel and the Bay of Biscay.	Refuge of the Britons.
AUVERGNE, . . .	On tribs. of the Loire and Garonne.	Central Highlands.
GASCONY, ...	South of the Garonne,	Gasconade—boasting.
BURGUNDY, . . .	On the Saone, . .	Burgundy wine.
DAUPHINÉ, . . .	East of the Rhone, .	Title of Dauphin.
PROVENCE, . . .	On the mouths of the Rhone.	Ancient civilisation.

99.—1. What are the extremities of the two lines which divide France into three regions according to climate? 2. Name the characteristic produce of each region. 3. What manufactures have their chief seats at Lyons, Rouen, and St. Etienne respectively? 4. Name the manufacture which is most extensive in France, and those which are characteristic of Paris. 5. Name the three towns which have linen manufactures. 6. Name the five great rivers which are united by canals. 7. Name the commercial towns standing at or near the mouths of the four among them, which reach the sea on the French coast.

DUCHY OF SAVOY, .	Between the Piedmontese Alps and the Lake of Geneva.	Ceded by Sardinia to France in 1860.
COUNTY OF NICE, .	Between the maritime Alps and the Mediterranean.	

Since the Revolution of 1789, France has been divided into eighty-six departments of nearly equal size, named after some striking physical fact in each. Thus French Flanders is now called the department of the *North ;* and Artois, that of *Pas de Calais*, or, in English, Straits of Dover ; so Alsace has been divided into the Upper and the Lower Rhine, and so on.

101. TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER-BASINS—

RHINE, ...	Strasburg, cathedral spire 466 feet high.
MEUSE, . . .	Sedan, manufacture of broad cloth.
SCHELDT, . . .	Valenciennes, famous for lace.
,, . . .	Cambray, hence cambric.
Near a trib. l. b.	Lille, linen manufacture.
CANCHE, . . .	Agincourt, victory of Henry V., 1415.
SOMME, . . .	Amiens, birthplace of Peter the Hermit.
SEINE, ...	Havre-de-Grace, foreign trade.
,, ...	Rouen, a little Manchester.
,, ...	Versailles, palace, with picture galleries.
,, ...	St. Cloud, smaller palace.
,, ...	Paris, the capital.
,, ...	Fontainebleau, palace and hunting-forest.
,, ...	Troyes, whence our Troy weight.
ORNE, ...	Caen, burial-place of William the Conqueror.
LOIRE, ...	Nantes, third seat of commerce.
,, ...	Orleans, Maid of Orleans.
On a trib. r. b.	St. Etienne, a little Birmingham.
On a trib. l. b.	Poitiers, victory of the Black Prince, 1356.
CHARENTE, . .	Rochefort, naval station.
,, . . .	Cognac, best brandy.
GARONNE, . . .	Bordeaux, second seat of commerce.
,, . . .	Toulouse, great transit trade.
ADOUR, . . .	Bayonne, invention of the bayonet.
On a trib. l. b.	Pau, winter resort for invalids.
RHONE, . . .	Avignon, residence of the Popes for 70 years.
,, ...	Lyons, largest manufacturing town.
On a trib. r. b.	Nismes, remains of Roman architecture.
,, ,,	Dijon, birthplace of the eloquent Bossuet.
,, ,,	Orange, whence the title Prince of Orange.
Near a trib. l. b.	Chamberri, capital of Savoy.

100.—1. In what two respects do the departments differ from the provinces? 2. What two provinces give name to famous wines? 3. When was France divided into departments?

MARITIME TOWNS NOT AT THE MOUTH OF ANY RIVER.

GERMAN OCEAN,	Dunkirk, sold to France by Charles II.
STRAITS OF DOVER,	Calais, nearest port to England.
ENGLISH CHANNEL,	Boulogne, much frequented by the English.
" "	Cherbourg and Brest, naval stations.
MEDITERRANEAN,	Montpellier, beautiful climate.
"	Marseilles, chief seat of commerce.
"	Toulon, naval station.
"	Nice, a favourite winter-residence for invalids.
"	Ajaccio, birthplace of Napoleon.

The chief seats of manufactures and commerce have all a population exceeding 100,000. Paris outstrips all the towns of France almost as far as London outstrips the towns of the United Kingdom.

Paris, ...	1,800,000	Nantes, ...	110,000
Lyons, ...	300,000	Toulouse, . . .	110,000
Marseilles, . . .	250,000	Rouen, ...	102,000
Bourdeaux, . .	150,000	St. Etienne, . .	94,000
Lille, ...	130,000	Toulon, ...	85,000

102. INHABITANTS.—The French are distinguished by sprightliness in conversation, ingenuity in the arts, and bravery in the field. Since the great revolution of 1789, they have had many forms of government. At present they are living under an absolute monarchy (sect. 15), called *empire*, because *emperor* is the title of the chief ruler. Almost the whole population is Roman Catholic; the Protestants do not number a million. The French language is superior to all others in precision; and French literature is the most influential on the Continent. The peasantry of French Flanders speak Flemish; those of Alsace,

---

101.—1. From what towns of France are the names *cambric*, *Troy*-weight, and the title Prince of Orange taken? 2. What three towns are the largest seats of commerce? 3. Name the four naval stations of France, and state which one of them is on the Mediterranean. 4. What two towns are famed respectively for lace and brandy? 5. What two towns are called respectively a little Manchester and a little Birmingham? 6. What two places are famous for victories gained by the English over the French? 7. Where were Peter the Hermit, Bossuet, and Napoleon respectively born? 8. In what three places on the Seine, not including Paris, are there royal palaces? 9. What is it that accumulates population in each of the ten towns, the population of which is exactly given?

102.—1. Mention three marked features of the French character. 2. Wherein are the French language and French literature distinguished above all others on the Continent? 3. In what three districts is the language of the peasantry other than French? 4. In what three parts of the British Isles are dialects akin to the Breton, spoken?

German; and those of Brittany, a Celtic dialect, akin to the Welsh, the Erse, and the Gaelic in the British Isles.

103. Foreign Possessions.—Algeria, on the coast of Africa opposite France, is the only large one. It is nearly as large as France itself, and consists of three natural divisions, viz., the fertile coast plain, the hilly plateau of Atlas, and the southern slope of that range, called Bilad-ul-Jerid, a parched region where dates grow, and pastoral tribes wander. The town of Algiers has about 30,000 inhabitants; and the whole country a little more than three millions. Apart from Saigon (p. 114), the other foreign possessions do not contain one million inhabitants. They are a few stations in Hindustan, of which Pondicherry is the chief; a few stations in Senegambia, on the western coast of Africa, of which St. Louis is the chief; the islands of Bourbon and Comoro (sect. 168), near Madagascar; Martinique and Guadaloupe, in the West Indies; a portion of Guiana, in South America (sect. 189); and lastly, in Oceania, the Marquesas Islands, New Caledonia, and Tahiti (sect. 210).

THE (IBERIAN) PENINSULA; or, SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

Shape, nearly square; Portugal is a rectangle.

Area, 218,000 square miles, fully two times larger than the British Isles. About five-sixths of this area belong to Spain.

Population, 19½ millions, or ½ million less than that of England and Wales. 16 millions belong to Spain, 3½ millions to Portugal.

104. Bird's-eye View.—Though divided between two independent kingdoms, the whole peninsula is physically one. The only natural boundaries between Spain and Portugal are rivers, viz., the Minho, Douro, Tagus, and Guadiana. Cut off from the rest of Europe by the Pyrenees, the Iberian Peninsula is, within itself, next to Switzerland, the most mountainous region in the world. Exception being made of the north-eastern corner, which slopes eastward, and forms the chief irregularity in the square of the peninsula, five mountain ranges divide it into four river basins, sloping westwards, and two narrow maritime districts, sloping, the one towards the north, the other towards

---

103.—1. Describe the three divisions into which Algeria naturally divides itself. 2. Name the chief French station in Hindustan. 3. What islands near Madagascar belong to France? 4. Also, what islands in Oceania?

the south. The land rises rapidly from the western shore towards a central table-land, which occupies the Spanish provinces of Leon, Old Castile, New Castile, and Estremadura, or nearly one-half of the whole peninsula. This table-land is the largest in Europe, and has an average height of 2000 feet. Its position in relation to the rest of the peninsula is shown in the following enumeration :—

Sierra de Asturias, . . .	Northern boundary of the table-land.
Basin of the Douro, . .	Northern half of the table-land.
Sierra de Guadarama, . .	Dividing ridge of the whole table-land.
Basin of the Tagus, . . .	Table-land of Madrid and Toledo.
Sierra de Toledo, . . .	Dividing ridge of the southern half of the table-land.
Basin of the Guadiana, .	Table-land of La Mancha.
Sierra de Morena, . . .	Southern boundary of the table-land.
Basin of the Guadalquivir,	Plain of Seville.
Sierra Nevada, or Snowy Mts.	The highest in Spain.

Mulhacen, the highest peak of the Sierra Nevada, is 11,673 feet high. It surpasses the highest of the Pyrenees (sect. 39 *c*), and is inferior only to the Alps in Europe. The mountains of Spain send prolongations into Portugal. The principal range wholly within Portugal is the Sierra de Estrella, a continuation of the Sierra de Guadarama. The Mondego is the only considerable river which has its entire course in Portugal. Owing to the extent of the table-land, no river of the peninsula is navigable far ; and the rivers farthest navigable are those farthest removed from the table-land : such are the Ebro, the Guadalquivir, and the Guadiana, the first navigable to *Saragossa*, the second to *Seville*, and the last for about forty miles from its mouth.

104.—1. How many times nearly does Spain exceed Portugal in area and population ? 2. What three rivers form part of the boundary between Spain and Portugal ? 3. What part of Spain must be excepted, in order to make the shape of the peninsula approach more nearly to the square ? 4. Name the four Spanish provinces belonging to the central table-land. 5. Name the northern and southern boundaries of the table-land. 6. What relation do the Sierra de Guadarama and the Sierra de Toledo bear respectively to the table-land ? 7. What two river-basins belong to the southern half of the table-land ? 8. Are the highest mountains in or out of the table-land ? 9. Name the five nearly parallel mountain-chains in the peninsula. 10. Name the four principal rivers falling into the Atlantic. 11. What mountains enclose the basins of these rivers respectively ? 12. To what basins do the plains of Toledo and La Mancha respectively belong ? 12. Name the three rivers which are navigable for the greatest distance. 13. Why should they be navigable farther than the Tagus and Douro ?

105. NATURAL FEATURES.—Tarifa Point, the most southerly land in Spain and in Europe, is assumed as the point where the Atlantic ends and the Mediterranean begins.

Atlantic Coast. Capes and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains.*	*Mediterranean Coast. Capes and Rivers*
River Bidassoa.	Pyrenees.	Cape Creux.
Cape Ortegal.		
Cape Finisterre.	Asturias Mountains.	River Llobregat.
River Minho.		
„ Douro.		River Ebro.
„ Mondego.	Sierra de Guadarama.	— Guadalaviar.
Cape Rocca.	Sierra de Estrella.	
River Tagus.	Sierra de Toledo.	River Xucar.
Cape Espichel.		Cape St. Martin.
River Guadiana.	Sierra Morena.	River Segura.
Cape St. Vincent.		Cape Palos.
River Guadalquivir.	Sierra Nevada.	Cape Gata.

106. INHABITANTS.—The Spaniards and Portuguese agree in race, religion, and government. Both are descended from Celtic tribes which were incorporated into the Roman empire; both are Roman Catholic; and both live under a constitutional monarchy (sect. 15). Their languages, though derived from the Latin, differ considerably from each other. Both nations have been charged with indolence, and the charge cannot be repelled so long as good roads and other means of communication are to be found only in the immediate neighbourhood of the largest towns.* The Catalonians, in the extreme north-eastern corner of the peninsula, form an exception in respect of industry. Wine is the only manufacture for which the peninsula is famous. Portugal produces Port wine, and Spain, Sherry. All the other exports are raw produce, chiefly fruit, silk, wool, and cork. Immense flocks of sheep are pastured on the central table-land, and Italy is the only country in Europe which produces more silk than the Iberian Peninsula. All the fruit exported grows near the coast. The climate of the interior is liable to great extremes of temperature at opposite seasons. Oranges will not grow in the open air at Madrid, though they

---

105.—(See sect. 46.) 1. What river forms part of the boundary between Spain and France? 2. On which side of the Sierra de Estrella does the Mondego flow? 3. Name the capes on either side of the estuary of the Tagus.

* Since 1850, Spain has made great progress in material prosperity. In 1860, there were seventeen railways in that country, with a total length of 1201 miles.

ripen at Naples, and even in Rome, both which places are farther from the equator.

107. TOWNS ACCORDING TO THE RIVER BASINS.—The only towns in the following table belonging to Portugal are the first two, viz., Oporto and Lisbon.

Where situated.	*Towns.*	*Population.*	*For what remarkable.*
DOURO, . .	Oporto, .	80,000	Gives name to Port wine.
TAGUS, . .	Lisbon, .	300,000	Capital of Portugal.
Trib. r. b.,	Madrid, .	476,000	Capital of Spain.
GUADIANA, .	Badajos, .		Stormed by Wellington, 1812.
GUADALQUIVIR,	Seville, .	152,000	Fine oranges.
,,	Cordova,		Goat-skin leather, called *Cordovan.*
Trib. l. b.,	Granada,	101,000	Moorish palace, called Alhambra.
GUADALETE, .	Xeres, .		Gives name to Sherry wine.
SEGURA, . .	Murcia, .	109,000	Chief town in Murcia.
GUADALAVIAR,	Valencia,	146,000	Chief town in Valencia.
EBRO, . . .	Saragossa,	82,000	Anciently *Cæsar Augusta.*
MARITIME TOWNS NOT AT THE MOUTH OF ANY RIVER.			
ATLANTIC, . .	Corunna,		Death of Sir John Moore.
,,	Cadiz, .	72,000	Seat of commerce.
,,	Trafalgar,		Nelson's victory, 1805.
MEDITERRANEAN,	Malaga, .	113,000	Finest raisins.
,,	Barcelona,	252,000	Chief seat of manufactures and commerce.

108. SPANISH POSSESSIONS.—These are—

Mediterranean, . . .	Balearic Islands, ...	260,000
Coast of Morocco, . .	Ceuta, ...	10,000
Atlantic, ...	Canary Islands, ...	230,000
West Indies, . . .	Cuba, Porto Rico, &c., . . .	2,000,000
Pacific, ...	Philippines and Ladrones, . .	4,000,000
		6,500,000

The Balearic Islands are rocky and mountainous. Majorca,

106.—1. In what three respects do the Spaniards and Portuguese agree? 2. In what part of Spain is Catalonia? 3. Name the five principal exports from the peninsula. 4. What prevents oranges from ripening at Madrid, although they ripen at the same latitude on the coast (sects. 23, 25)?

107.—(See sect. 87.) 1. Name the capitals of Spain and Portugal. 2. What towns give name to Port and Sherry? 3. Who gained victories at Badajos and Trafalgar respectively? 4. What towns are famous for raisins and oranges respectively? 5. What makes Barcelona the second city in Spain? 6. Name the only two large towns in Portugal.

the largest, contains *Palma*, the capital of the group. Minorca, the next largest, contains *Port Mahon*, the finest harbour in the group. Ceuta is a fortress directly opposite Gibraltar. The Canaries are exceedingly mountainous. In one of them the Peak of Teneriffe, an extinct volcano, rises 12,000 feet above the sea. The largest, called Grand Canary, is also the most fertile. Its capital, *Palmas*, is the only town in the group with a population exceeding 10,000. The only drawback to the delightful climate of these islands is occasional droughts, which last sometimes through several years, and cause great suffering to the inhabitants. Besides Cuba and Porto Rico, two of the Virgin Islands belong to Spain (sect. 200). The tobacco of the Philippines is the best in the world. The chief Spanish settlement is *Manilla* (pop. 150,000) in Luzon, the largest island of the group. The Ladrones are governed in connexion with the Philippines.

109. PORTUGUESE POSSESSIONS.—These are—

Atlantic, ...	The Azores, ...	200,000
,, ...	Madeira, ...	100,000
,, ...	Cape Verde Islands, ...	80,000
,, ...	Island of St. Thomas, ...	10,000
Western Africa, . .	Angola, &c., ...	760,000
Eastern Africa, . . .	Mozambique, &c., ...	500,000
Hindostan, ...	Goa (sect. 150), ...	320,000
Oriental Archipelago,	Half of Timor, ...	1,000,000
China, ...	Macao, ...	30,000
		3,000,000

The Azores, like the Canaries, are mountainous and of volcanic origin. *St. Michael's*, the largest, gives name to the finest oranges. Madeira is also mountainous. Wine is its chief produce. The capital, *Funchal*, is a favourite winter residence for consumptive patients. The Cape Verde Islands are of the same physical character with the Azores and Canaries. The island of Timor, which produces abundance of the sweet-smelling wood called Sandal wood, is divided between Portugal and Holland (sect. 86).

108.—1. Name the largest two of the Balearic Islands, and the chief place in each. 2. Compare the Peak of Teneriffe with Mulhacen (sect. 104). 3. Where is Manilla? 4. Which of the Spanish possessions suffer fearfully from long-continued droughts? 5. What possessions has Spain in the West Indies? 6. Where and what is Ceuta?

109.—1. Which two of the Portuguese possessions are famous respectively for wine and oranges? 2. Name two groups which have the same physical character as the Canaries.

SWITZERLAND.

Shape, oval on the whole.
Area, 15,260, square miles, about half the size of Scotland.
Population, nearly 2½ millions, or nearly equal to that of Scotland.

110. Bird's-eye View.—Switzerland is the most mountainous country in Europe. The southern cantons are the most mountainous, yet one of these, Ticino, being situated on the southern slope of the Alps (sect. 24), has a milder climate than any other. The surface of Switzerland slopes in all directions; towards the south, along the Ticino, a tributary of the Po; towards the east, along the Inn, a tributary of the Danube; towards the west, along the Rhone; towards the north, along the Rhine and its tributaries. The largest of the tributaries of the Rhine is the Aar. The Reuss, an affluent of the Aar, the Ticino, the Rhone and the Rhine, all rise on opposite sides of the same mountain, St. Gothard. All the Swiss lakes are on the Rhine and its tributaries, except the Lake of Geneva, which is on the Rhone. The chief among the others are Lake Constance, on the Rhine; Lake Neufchatel, on the Aar; Lake Lucerne, on the Reuss; and Lake Zurich, on the Lemmat, another affluent of the Aar.

111. Inhabitants.—The Swiss are distinguished by industry, bravery, and love of liberty. Pasturage, agriculture, and manufactures are all prosperous. Corn is imported, because there is not arable land to grow enough of it; but cattle and cheese are exported. The silk and cotton manufactures are extensive; watches, jewellery, and musical boxes are characteristic products of Swiss Industry. The Rhone, not being navigable immediately below *Geneva*, does not compete with the Rhine as an outlet for trade. Accordingly, the chief emporium is *Basle*, situ-

---

110.—1. Whether is Switzerland or Scotland the more densely peopled? 2. Why has Ticino a milder climate than any other canton? 3. Along what four rivers does the surface of Switzerland slope in different directions? 4. What four rivers rise from opposite sides of St. Gothard? 5. Name the largest two lakes, and the rivers which flow through them. 6. Name three large lakes on the Aar. 7. Name two tributaries of the Aar. 8. What two countries bound Switzerland on the north? 9. What river separates these two countries from each other where they bound Switzerland?

ated where the Rhine leaves the Swiss territory. Switzerland is a federal republic (sect. 15), and *Berne*, on the Aar, is called the capital, because the diet, which deliberates on the common interests of all Switzerland, meets there. The discussions of the diet are carried on in German. Three-fourths of the whole population speak that language. French prevails on the side of France; and Italian in the canton of Ticino. The majority of the population is Protestant; and the western cantons, in which industry and education have made the greatest progress, are almost exclusively so.

Geneva, . . 42,000	Basle, . . 38,000	Berne, . . 30,000

ITALY.

Shape, Peninsular Italy resembles a boot.
Area, 118,000 square miles, nearly equal to that of the British Isles.
Population, fully 25 millions, 4 millions less than that of the British Isles.

112. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—Italy is partly continental, partly peninsular, and partly insular. Continental Italy is chiefly a low plain, enclosed by the Alps on every side, except the east, and watered by the Po, the largest of Italian rivers. The adjacent country is generally lower than the Po, so that strong embankments are required to save it from inundation. Peninsular Italy consists of the ridges and valleys of the Apennines, which are really a prolongation of the Genoese Alps, with maritime plains on either side, the largest of which lies along the coast of Tuscany and the Papal States. Insular Italy, comprising Sicily, Sardinia, and Corsica (France, sect. 97), has the same configuration as the peninsula. Continental Italy is famous for its Alpine lakes; the principal are Garda, Maggiore, and Como (sect. 39), communicating respectively by the Mincio,

---

111.—1. Mention three features of the Swiss character. 2. Mention three forms of industry which flourish in Switzerland. 3. Which one of them does not yield enough for home consumption? 4. Which are the three largest towns? 5. Why is Berne called the capital of Switzerland? 6. Mention three articles for the manufacture of which the Swiss are particularly famed. 7. What three languages are spoken in Switzerland? 8. What language is spoken, and what religion professed by the majority? 9. Are the French-speaking cantons chiefly Protestant or Roman Catholic?

tures flourish only in the Italic Kingdom and in the Venetian territory: the weaving of silk is by far the most important.

116. CLASSIFICATION OF TOWNS—

(a.) *Towns according to the River-Basins.*

Where situated.	*Towns.*	*For what remarkable.*
Po,	Turin,	Capital of the Italic Kingdom.
Trib. r. b.,	Alessandria,	Seat of very large fairs.
" *l. b.*,	Milan,	Chief town in Lombardy.
ARNO,	Florence,	Chief town in Tuscany.
"	Pisa,	Leaning Bell-Tower.
TIBER,	Rome,	Capital of the Papal States.
RENO,	Bologna,	Chief town in Romagna.

(b.) *Maritime Towns not at the Mouth of any River.*

MEDITERRANEAN COAST.	Genoa,	Chief seaport in the Italic Kingdom.
	Carrara,	Exports the finest white marble.
	Leghorn,	Second seaport in the Italic Kingdom.
	Civita Vecchia,	Only seaport in the Papal States.
	Naples,	Capital of the Two Sicilies.
ADRIATIC COAST.	Venice,	Capital of the Venetian Territory.
	Sinigaglia,	Seat of the greatest fairs in Italy.
	Ancona,	Considerable seaport.
ISLANDS.	Palermo,	Largest town in Sicily.
	Messina,	Finest harbour in Sicily.
	Cagliari,	Chief town in Sardinia.

In respect of population, the principal towns rank as follows:—

Naples,	447,000	Milan,	196,000	Venice,	118,000
Turin,	205,000	Palermo,	194,000	Florence,	114,000
Rome,	197,000	Genoa,	128,000	Bologna,	109,000

115.—1. In what three respects do the inhabitants of all Italy agree? 2. Name the two Italian states in which manufactures flourish. 3. What is the most important manufacture? 4. Name the four staple products of Italy.

116.—1. In what two towns are great fairs held? 2. Name the chief seaport in the Italic Kingdom and the only one in the Papal States. 3. Name the largest town in Sicily. 4. Of what provinces are Milan, Bologna, and Florence respectively the chief towns? 5. For what are Pisa, Nice, and Carrara severally remarkable? 6. Name two towns the population of each of which is nearly the same as that of Rome? 7. What town in the Italic Kingdom is larger than Turin, its present capital?

GREECE.

Area, 15,000 square miles, equal to half that of Scotland.

Population, One million, one-third that of Scotland.

117. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—Greece terminates one of the three great southern peninsulas of Europe (sect. 36). The surface of both the mainland and the islands is overspread by mountains, which form bold headlands along the coast. The highest mountain is Guiona (8000 feet), on the Turkish frontier; but the most famous is Parnassus. Not far from Parnassus is Topolias, the largest lake. There is not one navigable river in the country; neither are there many roads. Hence industry of every kind is very backward, and the towns are small. The whole country is divided into—

Livadia, or Continental Greece;
Morea, or Peninsular Greece; and
Insular Greece, comprising Negropont and the Cyclades.

118. NATURAL FEATURES.—Cape Matapan, the most southerly land in Europe next to Tarifa (sect. 105), is assumed as the meeting-point of the eastern and western coasts towards the south:—

West Coast.	*Interior.*	*East Coast.*
Gulf of Arta.	Mount Guiona.	Gulf of Volo.
(St. Maura Island.)	Mount Parnassus.	Negropont Island.
(Thiaki Island.)	Lake Topolias.	Straits of Chalcis.
(Cephalonia Island.)		Cyclades Islands.
Gulf of Corinth.	Isthmus of Corinth.	Gulf of Ægina.
,, Patras.		Cape Colonna.
(Zante Island.)		Gulf of Napoli.
Bay of Navarino.		Cape St. Angelo.
Cape Gallo.		Gulf of Kolokythia.
Gulf of Koron.		(Cerigo Island.)

117.—1. How many times is the population of Scotland denser than that of Greece? 2. Mention the three natural divisions of Greece.

118.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Which are the two most southerly points in Europe? 2. In what two gulfs does the Turkish frontier terminate? 3. Name the four Ionian Islands which lie along the western coast of Greece. 4. Which of them is opposite the Gulf of Patras? 5. Between what two capes does Cerigo lie? 6. Between what two gulfs is the Isthmus of Corinth? 7. Name the three promontories, in which the Morea terminates southwards. 8. Name the gulf on either side of Cape Matapan.

The five islands, placed above in parentheses, belong to the Ionian Islands, which are now politically connected with Greece (sect. 65).

119. Inhabitants.—The great majority live in villages, and are engaged in pasturage and agriculture. The climate is favourable to fruit; accordingly the olive and the grape are staple productions. The only produce, in which Greece excels, is the small grape imported into England under the name of dried *currants*. There is a considerable proportion of Slavonians in the population, and they have a dialect of their own; but Greek is the printed language of the whole country, and both races are equally attached to the Greek Church, and to the government, which is a constitutional monarchy (sect. 15). Greeks occupy all the learned professions, and form the major part of the population in towns. The only considerable towns are:—

Athens, the capital, and by far the largest town, .	Pop. 40,000
Hermopolis, in the island of Syra, the chief commercial depot,	35,000
Patras, in the Morea, has an immense export of currants,	20,000
Piræus, the port of Athens, and five miles distant from it,	6,000

The Greeks are indifferent workers with the hand, but remarkably clever with both the tongue and the pen.

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

Area, 203,000 square miles, nearly twice that of the British Isles.
Population, 15½ millions, fully twice that of Ireland.

120. Bird's-eye View.—A continuation of the Carnic Alps (sect. 93), which enters Turkey at the north-western corner, and descends to the frontier of Greece, forms throughout a watershed between the rivers flowing into the Adriatic, and those flowing into the Archipelago and Black Sea. The narrow maritime district west of this chain is the most mountainous in Turkey. East of it are numerous plains, the largest being that of the

---

119.—1. Name the four principal towns? 2. What is the religion and what the government of Greece? 3. What is the chief export? 4. In what sort of work do the Greeks excel?

Lower Danube and its tributaries, the Serth and Pruth. This plain is the most fertile, the most commercial, and the most populous region in Turkey. South of it, and separated from it by the Hæmus or Balkan, are other plains, along the rivers Maritza, Karasu, and Vardar, which fall into the Archipelago. North of the Balkan, the climate is especially favourable to grain, and south of it to fruit. The Danube (sect. 94) is the only river navigable, the whole year through, for any considerable distance. The Maritza, the next largest to the Danube, admits small vessels as far as Adrianople, but not in summer.

121. NATURAL FEATURES—

West Coast.	*Interior.*	*East Coast.*
		River Danube.
Adriatic Gulf.	Hæmus or Balkan.	Black Sea.
		Bosporus.
		Sea of Marmora.
Straits of Otranto.		Dardanelles.
	Lake Scutari.	River Maritza.
		Gulf of Contessa.
		River Karasu.
	Mount Athos or Monte Santo.	Gulf of Monte Santo.
		Gulf of Cassandra.
	Mount Pindus.	Gulf of Salonica.
Ionian Sea.	Lake Ochrida.	River Vardar.
Corfu Island.	Lake Jannina.	Archipelago.
Gulf of Arta.	Mount Olympus.	Gulf of Volo.

122. CHIEF TOWNS.—The number of large towns in Turkey, notwithstanding the backwardness of its industry and the fewness of the roads, proves how great are the natural resources of the country. *Constantinople*, the capital (pop. 930,000) is inferior in population, among European towns, only to London and Paris.

Four provincial towns have a population approaching 100,000. They are—

120.—1. In what directions do the two principal mountain-chains run? 2. Name the three rivers falling into the Archipelago. 3. In what three respects is the plain of the Lower Danube distinguished above the rest of European Turkey? 4. Point out on the map the most mountainous district.

121.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the three Albanian lakes. 2. Name the boundaries of Europe with Asia, from the mouth of the Danube to the Archipelago. 3. Into what gulfs do the Vardar and Karasu respectively flow? 4. What gulfs are situated between these two?

Adrianople, . .	On the Maritza, . . .	Capital of Thrace.
Bucharest, . .	On the Dombrovitza, .	Capital of Wallachia.
Bosna-Serai, . .	On trib. of the Save, .	Capital of Bosnia.
Salonica, . . .	On Salonica Gulf, . .	Capital of Salonica.

The province of Salonica comprises Thessaly and part of Macedonia. The town of *Salonica* manufactures carpets; that of *Adrianople* silks, cottons, and woollens.

Three of the provincial towns have a population approaching 50,000. They are—

Sophia, . . .	On trib. of the Isker, .	Capital of Bulgaria.
Jassy, ...	On trib. of the Pruth, .	Capital of Moldavia.
Jannina, . . .	On Lake Jannina, . .	Capital of Epirus.

The following towns owe their importance to the Danubian trade, viz., *Galatz*, in Moldavia; *Silistria*, *Rustchuk*, *Sistora*, and *Widin* in Bulgaria; and *Belgrade* in Servia. *Candia*, the capital of the large island of Crete, has 15,000 inhabitants.

123. INHABITANTS.—The population is divided by race, language, and religion. Only about six millions are Turkish and Mahometan: the rest are Christians of the Greek Church; but they differ from one another in race and language. The Moldavians and Wallachians are of Roman origin, speak a corrupt sort of Latin, and enjoy an almost independent government. The obligation to pay an annual tribute is all that binds them to the Sultan. In the other provinces north of the Balkan, the Slavonic element prevails. About a million Greeks are scattered throughout the various provinces. The Turkish government used to oppress its Christian subjects. It now treats them fairly, but is still despotic in form.

124. TURKISH EMPIRE.—The Turkish Empire has a footing in the three quarters of the Old World. Besides Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia, there is Turkey in Africa, com-

---

122.—1. Name four provincial towns of the first class. 2. What rank does Constantinople hold among the capitals of Europe? 3. Name three provincial towns of the second rank. 4. Name the capitals of Moldavia, Wallachia, and Bulgaria. 5. What ancient divisions are comprehended in the modern province of Salonica? 6. Name four commercial towns on the Danube in Bulgaria. 7. Name two not in Bulgaria, and mention to what provinces they respectively belong.

123.—1. In what provinces is a corrupt Latin spoken? 2. About how many of the inhabitants speak a corrupt Greek? Where does the Sclavonic element prevail?

prising Egypt, Tripoli, and Tunis. Once the terror of Christendom, this empire now owes its existence to the support of Britain and France, without which it would fall a prey to Russia. The Turks were never great in peace, and they have now ceased to be great even in war. The common people are ignorant, but honest, stoical, and very improvident. The following are the statistics of the Turkish Empire :—

	Europe.	Asia.	Africa.	Total.
Mahometans, .	6,000,000	14,000,000	11,000,000	31,000,000
Christians, . .	9,500,000	2,000,000	500,000	12,000,000
	15,500,000	16,000,000	11,500 000	43,000,000

SUPPLEMENTARY TABLE.

125. CLASSIFICATION, ACCORDING TO THE RIVER BASINS, OF TOWNS SITUATED ON RIVERS WHICH TRAVERSE MORE THAN ONE COUNTRY—

(*The Colon indicates a change of Country.*)

DANUBE, . Galatz, Silistria, Rustchuk, Sistora, Widin, Belgrade. Buda and Pesth, Vienna: Ratisbon: Ulm.
Trib. r. b. Sophia, on trib. of the Isker; Bosna-Serai, on trib. of the Save: Gratz, on trib. of the Drave; Innspruck, on the Inn: Munich, on the Iser.
Trib. l. b. Jassy, on trib. of the Pruth: Klausenburg, on trib. of the Theiss; Brunn, on trib. of the March.

RHINE, . . Leyden, Utrecht: Cologne, Bonn, Coblentz: Mentz: Mannheim, Carlsruhe: Strasburg: Basle.
Trib. r. b. Elberfeld, on the Wipper: Frankfort, on the Maine: Nuremberg, on trib. of the Maine: Darmstadt, on the Darm: Heidelberg, on the Neckar: Stuttgart, on trib. of the Neckar.
Trib. l. b. Berne, on the Aar.

124.—1. What power does Turkey dread most? 2. What powers are its main support? 3. Sketch the Turkish character. 4. In which continent does the strength of the Turkish empire lie?

ELBE,	Hamburg: Magdeburg: Dresden. *Trib. r. b.* Potsdam, on the Havel; Berlin, on trib. of the Havel. *Trib. l. b.* Leipsic, on trib. of the Saale: Prague, on the Moldau.
VISTULA,	Dantzic: Warsaw: Cracow.
MEUSE,	Rotterdam: Liege, Namur: Sedan. *Trib. r. b.* Schiedam, Gouda: Verviers.
SCHELDT,	Antwerp, Ghent, Tournay: Valenciennes, Cambray. *Trib. r. b.* Malines, Louvain, on the Dyle; Brussels, on the Senne; Mons, on the Haine. *Trib. l. b.* Lille.
RHONE,	Avignon, Lyons: Geneva. *Trib. r. b.* Nismes, Dijon. *Trib. l. b.* Orange.

125.—Manifold and repeated cross-questioning by the master can alone render the pupil familiar with this important table.

ASIA.

Area, nearly one-third of the dry land on the Globe; more than four times that of Europe.

Population, Six hundred and fifty millions, more than half the population of the Globe.

126. Bird's-eye View.—The Himalaya and Altai mountains divide the principal mass of Asia into three regions, a northern, a central, and a southern. The northern is low, level, and swampy; all its drainage flows into the Arctic Ocean. The central region is an immense table-land (sects. 13, 32), traversed by lofty mountains, of which the Quan-lun and Thian-chan, running parallel with the Himalaya and Altai, are the principal ranges. Most of its drainage is received by lakes that have no communication with the ocean. North of Lake Lob, three snowy peaks, in the highest part of the Thian-chan range, mark very nearly the centre of Asia; west of this point are several active volcanoes. The highest summits, not only in Asia, but on the globe, are in the Himalaya (sect. 17). The southern region has a diversified surface. In China it is an alluvial plain; and, in the South-Eastern Peninsula, a series of mountain-ranges and valleys; while, from the Bay of Bengal to the Red Sea, table-lands abound (sect. 32). As, with the small exception of Turkey and Arabia, Asia lies in one continuous mass, its climate is highly *continental* (sect. 25). The southern region is by far the most important. Northern and Central Asia are shut out from the commerce of the world; the former by its rivers communicating with a frozen ocean; the latter by its rivers not communicating with the ocean at all. These two regions accordingly are very thinly peopled. Southern Asia resembles Europe by being highly peninsular (sect. 36), and far surpasses it in density of population. It contains all but a fraction of the whole population of Asia. China alone contains more than one half of it.

126.—1. Name the two mountain-ranges, the river, and the three seas, which separate Asia from Europe. 2. Name the boundaries between Asia and Africa on the south-west; and between Asia and America on the north-east. 3. Name the northern and southern boundaries of the three regions into which Asia is divided. 4. Which of these regions is the lowest, which is the highest, and which is the most

127. COUNTRIES OF ASIA WITH THEIR POPULATION AND CHIEF TOWNS—

Countries.	Population.	Chief Towns.
Siberia, . . .	4,000,000	Tobolsk, at the junction of the Tobol and Irtish.
Turkestan, . .	2,000,000	Bokhara, Khiva, Khokand.
Transcaucasia, .	3,000,000	Teflis, on the Kour.
Turkey in Asia, .	16,000,000	Smyrna, Damascus.
Arabia, . . .	6,000,000	Mecca, Medina, Muscat.
Persia, . . .	10,000,000	Teheran, Ispahan.
Affghanistan, . .	5,000,000	Cabool, Candahar.
Beloochistan, .	500,000	Kelat.
Hindustan and Ceylon, &c., see p. 52,	186,000,000	Calcutta, Madras, Bombay.
Birmah, . . .	2,000,000	Ava, on the Irawady.
Malay States, . .	500,000	
Siam, . . .	3,000,000	Bankok, on the Meinam.
Laos, . . .	1,000,000	Chang-mai, on the Meinam.
Annam, . . .	9,000,000	Hue, Saigon, Ketsho.
China Proper, .	360,000,000	Pekin, Nankin, Canton.
Manchooria, . .	2,000,000	Moukden.
Corea, . . .	2,000,000	King-ki-tao.
Mongolia, . .	3,000,000	Ourga.
Thibet, . . .	9,000,000	Lassa, Ladakh.
Little Bokhara, .	1,000,000	Cashgar, Yarkund, Lob.
Japan, . . .	25,000,000	Jedo, Meaco.
	650,000,000	

128. PRINCIPAL NATURAL FEATURES IN THE COAST-LINE OF ASIA, EXCEPTING TOWARDS EUROPE (sect. 136).

Arctic Ocean.

Islands.	*Capes.*	*Inlets.*	*Rivers.*
		Gulf of Obi.	Obi.
	North East.		Yenisei.
Liakhov.			Lena.
	East.	Kolima Bay.	Kolima.

---

diversified? 5. Where are the highest mountains? 6. What sort of mountains are at the very centre of Asia? 7. What is peculiar about the drainage of central Asia? 8. In what direction do the minor table-lands lie from the largest? 9. Why should the extremes of temperature be greater in Asia than in Europe? 10. What natural advantages does southern Asia possess over the other two divisions? 11. In which division, and in what particular country, is population densest?

127.—(See sect. 87.) Name the four countries traversed by the Tropic of Cancer. 2. What five countries compose the South-eastern Peninsula?

Pacific Ocean.

Islands.	*Capes.*	*Bays.*	*Rivers.*
St. Lawrence.		Gulf of Anadir.	Anadir.
Aleutian group.		Gulf of Penjinsk.	
Kourile „	Lopatka.	Sea of Okhotsk.	
Saghalien.		Gulf of Tartary.	Amour.
Japan group.		Perouse Straits.	
		Sea of Japan.	
		Straits of Corea.	
Loo Choo group.		Yellow Sea.	Yangtsekiang.
Chusan.		Gulf of Petchili.	Hoangho.
Formosa.		Fokien Channel.	
Hong Kong.		Chinese Sea.	Hongkiang.
Hainan.		Gulf of Tonquin.	Maykiang.
		Gulf of Siam.	Meinam.

Indian Ocean.

Nicobar group.		Straits of Malacca.	
Andaman „		Gulf of Martaban.	Irawady.
Ramree „		Bay of Bengal.	Burhampooter.
		Palk's Straits.	Ganges.
Ceylon.	Dondra Head.	Gulf of Manaar.	Mahanuddy.
Maldive group.	Comorin.		Godavery.
Laccadive „		Gulf of Cambay.	Nerbudda.
		Gulf of Cutch.	
		Arabian Sea.	Indus.
	Ras al Had.	Gulf of Oman.	
		Straits of Ormus.	Euphrates.
Bahrein.		Persian Gulf.	Tigris.
Perim	Fartak.	Straits of Bab-el-Mandeb.	
		Red Sea.	
		Gulf of Akaba.	
		Gulf of Suez.	

129. LAKES, MOUNTAINS, AND RIVERS—

(a.) *Table of the Asiatic Lakes, showing with what Mountain ranges they are associated :—*

Mountains.	*Lakes.*	*Mountains.*	*Lakes.*
Taurus.	Koch-hissar.	Altai.	Baikal.
Lebanon.	Dead Sea.	Himalaya.	Palteh.
Ararat.	Van.	Coosh.	Zurrah.
Elburz.	Ooroomiah.	Thian-chan.	Balkash.
Caucasus.	Caspian.	Quan-lun.	Lob.
Ural.	Aral.	Peling.	Tong-ting.

128.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the four chief rivers of Siberia. 2 Name the three largest rivers falling into the Bay of Bengal. 3. Name the four seas between Cape Lopatka and Singapore. 4. Between which two of them is the peninsula of Corea ? 5. What two gulfs are separated by the peninsula of Malacca ? 6. Name two large islands and two small ones off the coast of China. 7. By what straits do the Red Sea and Persian Gulf respectively communicate with the Arabian Sea ? 8. What straits separate the islands of Ceylon, Sumatra, Formosa, and Kiusiu respectively from the mainland ? 9. With what seas are the Gulfs of Siam, Tonquin, Petchili, (*b*.) *List of the Table-lands* :—

Deccan,	3000 feet high.	Arabia,	3,000 feet high.
Persia,	4000 „	Gobi,	9,000 „
Armenia,	7000 „	Thibet,	10,000 „

(*c*.) *List of the Principal Rivers.*

Rivers.	*Belonging to*	*Falling into*	*Length.*
Yang-tse-kiang,	China,	Yellow Sea,	3200 miles.
Yenisei,	Siberia,	Arctic Ocean,	2900 ..
Hoang-ho,	China,	Yellow Sea,	2600 ..
Obi,	Siberia,	Arctic Ocean,	2500 ..
Lena,	Siberia,	„ „	2400 ..
Amour,	Mongolia,	Gulf of Tartary,	2300 ..

These six rivers are all longer than the Volga, the longest river in Europe (sect. 40): so probably are the Irawady, the Indus, and the Maykiang. The Ganges and the Euphrates are both under 2000 miles in length.

130. INHABITANTS.—With comparatively trifling exceptions, the population of Asia is divided between two races, the Caucasian and Mongolian (sect. 20), and among three religions, viz., Mahometanism, Brahminism, and Buddhism. If the curve of the Himalaya be continued to the Ural Mountains, a line is obtained south-west of which the population is Caucasian, with the single exception of the Turks (sect. 41); and east of which the population is wholly Mongolian. The inhabitants of the South-Eastern Peninsula are of mixed origin. Buddhism prevails in China, Brahminism in India, and Mahometanism in southern-western Asia. The civilisation of Asia, *i.e.*, of southern Asia, is the oldest in the world. It differs from that of Europe in three important respects; it is barbaric, being showy rather than solid; it is comparatively stationary; and it has ever been allied with despotism.

---

and Penjinsk severally connected? 10. In what two gulfs does the Red Sea terminate northwards? 11. Name three groups of islands in the Bay of Bengal. 12. Name the most southerly points in Hindustan and Ceylon. 13. What five peninsulas point southward, beginning with Arabia?

129.—1. How many of the associated mountains and lakes are in Asiatic Turkey? 2. Which couple belongs to China proper? 3. Name the four table lands lying south and west of the Himalaya. 4. What two oceans receive the six largest rivers? 5. How many of the six rivers flow into each?

130.—1. Name the two principal races. 2. What geographical boundary separates them? 3. Name the three principal religions. 4. Where do they severally prevail? 5. Which race is the most numerous? 6. Which religion counts most adherents (sect. 21)? 7. In what respect does the civilisation of Asia surpass that of Europe? 8. In what three respects is it inferior?

SIBERIA ; OR, RUSSIA IN ASIA.

Area, 5,000,000 square miles, one-third larger than all Europe.
Population, Four millions, one million more than that of Scotland.

131. Bird's-eye View.—Siberia is a marshy plain, rising very gradually from the Arctic Ocean towards the Ural mountains, the Altai, and the ranges which skirt the Sea of Okhotsk. These last ranges are wholly within the Russian territory, which now extends to the Amour or Saghalien,* in the direction of Chinese Manchooria. The rise of the Siberian plain is less than a foot per mile ; hence the rivers are slow and deep. So extensive is the natural system of water-communication, that, excepting only sixty miles of land-carriage, goods are sent by rivers and lakes from Kiakhta, beyond Lake Baikal, on the Chinese frontier, to Tobolsk, on the principal tributary of the Obi. Lakes are numerous : Baikal, the largest, is half the size of Scotland ; it communicates with the Yenisei. The peninsula of Kamtchatka forms no part of the plain ; it is traversed by a mountain range in which are five volcanoes. The cold of the Siberian winter is proverbial ; it increases from west to east, so that pines, which exceed a hundred feet in height on the banks of the Yenisei, are dwarfed into shrubs beyond the Lena. The long winter confines the operations of agriculture within very narrow limits.

132. Remarkable Places.—The towns are at once military and trading ports ; most of their inhabitants are Cossacks and other Russians from Europe. The two largest are *Tobolsk*, at the junction of the Tobol and Irtish, and *Irkutsk*, near Lake Baikal ; each has a population of about 20,000. Siberian commerce consists in the exchange of whatever the fisheries, hunting-grounds, and mines of the country produce, for the manufactured goods of Europe and China. The great mart of exchange with China is *Kiakhta*. *Yakutsk*, on the Lena, is believed to be the coldest town on the face of the earth. Of the

---

131.—1. How are the mountains situated with respect to the Siberian plain ? 2. Describe the peninsula of Kamtchatka. 3. Why are the Siberian rivers slow ? 4. Compare Siberia with Europe, and its largest lake with Scotland, in respect of size. 5. How does the extreme cold of Siberia impede the operations of agriculture and trade (sect. 126) ? 6. Does the extreme of cold increase in the same direction in Siberia as in Europe (sect. 25) ?

[*] In 1860, Russia acquired additional territory, so that the lower Amour is now wholly Russian. From the junction of the Oussouri with the Amour, the new boundary runs southward to the Sea of Japan, nearly coinciding with the 135th meridian.

islands belonging to Siberia, the Liakhovs, in the Arctic Ocean, have no permanent inhabitants. The Aleutians, between Asia and America, are just the tops of volcanoes that have risen out of the sea; several of these volcanoes are active. The few inhabitants of both the Aleutians and the Kouriles live by hunting and fishing.

TURKESTAN; OR, INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

Area, 800,000 square miles, nearly seven times that of the British Isles.

Population, Two millions, one million less than that of Scotland.

133. Bird's-eye View.—Physically, Turkestan is a sandy desert, except along the rivers, and as far on each side of them as water is conveyed by artificial channels. The surface rises from the Caspian and Sea of Aral in the direction of the Jihoon, or Amoo, and of the Sirdaria, or Sihon, which are the two principal rivers. The frontier, enclosing the sources of these rivers, is exceedingly mountainous. The Sea of Aral, Lake Balkash, and most of the smaller lakes, are, like the Caspian itself (sect. 34), salt. Politically, Turkestan is divided into a great many independent states. The most powerful is the kingdom of Bokhara, situated on the Upper Amoo; its capital, Bokhara (pop. 150,000), manufactures cottons and silks, and is a great emporium of trade with Central Asia. The inhabitants of Turkestan are Mahometans: like the Russians, Dutch, and British, they are very fond of tea: whole tribes of them are mere wandering shepherds.

132.—1. Make two remarks which apply to all Siberian towns. 2. Name the two chief towns. 3. In what does Siberian commerce consist? 4. What are Kiakhta and Yakutsk remarkable for, respectively? 5. How are goods conveyed from Kiakhta to Russia? 6. Name three groups of islands belonging to Siberia. 7. Which of them resembles Kamtchatka (sect. 131) by having the same physical phenomena?

133.—1. Describe the surface of Turkestan. 2. Name its two chief rivers, and its two chief lakes. 3. Name the six countries which surround it. 4. On what is the prosperity of the city of Bokhara founded? 5. To what parts of Turkestan is agriculture confined? 6. Name four countries, out of China, in which tea is a favourite beverage.

TRANS-CAUCASIAN PROVINCES OF RUSSIA.

Area, 130,000 square miles, considerably greater than the area of the British Isles.

Population, Three millions, the same as that of Scotland.

134. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW. — Trans-Caucasia comprises the southern slopes of the Caucasus, which are much longer and more gradual than those on the northern side, also the fertile plains which lie between the Caucasus and the table-lands of Armenia and Persia. These plains yield the peculiar produce of southern Europe, viz., wine, olives, and cotton. *Teflis*, the capital of Georgia, situated on the Kour, is the largest Russian city beyond the Caucasus: population 40,000. The native population is Mahometan. All the tribes of the Caucasus have at length submitted to Russia. The Circassians, whose women are noted for beauty, occupy the western part of the range.

TURKEY IN ASIA.

Area, 475,000 square miles, or four times that of the British Isles.

Population, Sixteen millions, Four millions less than that of England and Wales.

135. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The peninsula of Asia Minor, and the other provinces lying between the same parallels with that peninsula, are overspread with mountains. The principal range, Taurus, forms a watershed between the rivers which flow into the Black Sea, on the one hand, and those which flow into the Mediterranean Sea and Persian Gulf, on the other. The highest summit in Asiatic Turkey is Mount Ararat, an extinct volcano, 17,000 feet high, and covered with perpetual snow. It is remarkable as standing where the territories of Turkey, Russia, and Persia meet. The rest of Turkey in Asia, *i.e.*, so much of it as lies south of the 36th parallel, excepting the immediate sea-coast of the Levant, is a plain. Owing to the mountain-

---

134.—1. What are the characteristic productions of the Trans-Caucasian plain? 2. Between what two seas is Trans-Caucasia situated? 3. Into which of them does the Kour flow? 4. What part of the Caucasus is inhabited by Circassians? 5. Contrast the northern and southern slopes of the Caucasus.

ous character of Asia Minor, most of its rivers are but torrents; the largest are the Kizil Irmak and Sakaria, which flow from the long northern slopes of Taurus to the Black Sea. The alluvial plain, where Nineveh and Babylon anciently flourished, is watered by the Euphrates and Tigris, navigable, the former to Bir, and the latter to Diarbekir. Both rivers overflow in spring, when the snows melt on the Armenian mountains. Were the superfluous water economized and distributed, throughout the whole year, as in ancient times, this plain would recover its fertility; as it is, cultivation does not extend far from the river-banks, along which may be seen vineyards, date-groves, and luxuriant crops of rice. The greater part of the plain is overgrown by coarse grass in winter; but in summer every green thing, not in the immediate vicinity of water, is burnt up. The valleys and maritime lowlands of Asia Minor yield the finest fruits, as grapes, figs, olives, and pomegranates. The climate of the interior varies so much with the elevation (sect. 23), that the vegetation of the higher parts is little different from that of the Scottish Highlands.

136. NATURAL FEATURES IN THE COAST-LINE OF ASIA-MINOR AND SYRIA—

Islands.	*Capes.*	*Bays.*	*Rivers.*
		Black Sea.	Jekil Irmak. Kizil Irmak. Sakaria.
		Bosporus.	
Marmora.		Sea of Marmora.	
Tenedos.	Baba.	Dardanelles.	
		Archipelago.	
Mytilene.		Gulf of Adramiti.	
Scio.		Gulf of Smyrna.	Sarabat.
Samos.		Gulf of Scala Nuova.	Meander.
Patmos and Cos.			
Rhodes.	Khelidonia.	Gulf of Adala.	
		Gulf of Iskenderoon.	Orontes.
Cyprus.		Levant.	

Of the islands, Cyprus is by far the largest and most fertile; Marmora was so called because of its marble quarries; Tenedos is the one

---

135.—1. Where is the mountainous region south of the 36th parallel? 2. What prevents the rivers of Asia Minor from being navigable? 3. Name the largest two. 4. Mention the height, and one point in the natural history of Mount Ararat. 5. Name the three states whose territories meet in it. 6. To what places are the Tigris and Euphrates respectively navigable? 7. Describe the appearance of the country at a little distance from these rivers in summer and in winter. 8. How could the whole plain be fertilized? 9. What are the principal fruits grown in Asia Minor? 10. In what parts alone of Asia Minor do these grow?

behind which the Greeks hid in their pretended return from Troy, which was situated on the opposite coast of the mainland; Patmos is the island where John wrote the Revelation; and Rhodes is famous for the bronze Colossus, which bestrode the entrance to the harbour.

137. THE HOLY LAND.—The maritime region of Syria is mountainous, particularly the southern part, comprising Palestine or the Holy Land. The principal mountain is Lebanon, which consists of two parallel limestone ridges, a western one called Libanus, and an eastern one called Anti-Libanus; the latter is the higher (10,000 feet), and is covered with all but perpetual snow. Its northern extremity gives rise to the Orontes, which flows by Antioch; and its southern to the Jordan, which, after flowing through the Lake of Tiberias, otherwise called the Sea of Galilee, falls into the Dead Sea. The Jordan, throughout the greater part of its course, flows at a level below that of the ocean; the Lake of Tiberias being 600 feet, and the Dead Sea upwards of 1000 feet, below the Mediterranean (sect. 36). The shores of the Dead Sea abound with traces of volcanic action, and quantities of asphalt float upon its surface. Its clear waters are so bitter that not even zoophytes can live in them, but they have no unpleasant effluvia, as has been said, and birds do fly across them. Lake Van, in Armenia, elevated more than 5000 feet above the ocean, is still larger than the Dead Sea; its waters too are salt, but they abound with fish. In the very centre of Asia Minor is a lake called Koch-Hissar, which, like the Dead Sea, is so salt that fish cannot live in it. The Lake of Tiberias has sweet water, and plenty of fish.

138. POPULATION.—The various races composing the population are separated from one another by language and religion,

---

136.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the water-boundaries between Europe and Turkey in Asia. 2. What three rivers flow northwards from Taurus? 3. What two rivers flow into the Archipelago? 4. Name three gulfs running into the land from the Archipelago. 5. What gulf separates part of Syria from part of Asia Minor? 6. At the entrance to what gulf is Cape Khelidonia? 7. For what are the islands of Marmora, Tenedos, Patmos, Rhodes, and Cyprus respectively remarkable?

137.—1. Describe Mount Lebanon. 2. What two rivers flow from it? 3. How many feet below the level of the Mediterranean are the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea respectively? 4. Mention some points of difference between these two lakes. 5. Where are Lakes Van and Koch-Hissar respectively situated? 6. Which of them resembles the Dead Sea in one important respect? 7. Name the only large fresh-water lake in Asiatic Turkey.

and show no disposition to amalgamate. The great majority are Mahometans, being either Turks or Arabs. The former outnumber all the other races in Asia Minor; the Arabs do the same in the provinces south of Asia Minor. The Christians are mostly Greeks or Armenians, and, like the Jews, devote themselves to manufactures and commerce; hence they are most numerous in the coast-towns of Asia Minor. The largest of these towns is *Smyrna*, the emporium of the Levant, with dried fruits for its staple. A railway has been commenced from Smyrna to *Aidin*, a large town in the interior. The only other town with a population exceeding 100,000, is *Damascus*, a great centre of internal traffic, and a chief seat of the cotton and silk manufactures. The only art in which the Turks equal Europeans is that of dyeing cloth and leather certain colours. Agriculture is in the rudest state.

139. IMPORTANT PLACES—

ASIA MINOR.—Besides Smyrna, there are *Scutari*, opposite Constantinople, and practically one of its suburbs; *Trebizond*, the most important sea-port on the Black Sea; and *Angora*, near the source of the Sakaria, famous for the long silky hair of its cats and goats. Of some towns once famous not even the site can now be ascertained. *Miletus*, *Ephesus*, and *Sardis*, are miserable villages. *Tarsus* has a population of 30,000.

ARMENIA.—*Erzeroum*, somewhat larger than Trebizond. A railway to connect these two towns was commenced in 1849.

MESOPOTAMIA.—*Bussorah*, on the united Tigris and Euphrates, is a great emporium of trade; population 70,000. *Bagdad*, somewhat smaller, on the Tigris, is a great starting-place for caravans into the interior. *Mosul*, farther up the same river, gives name to *muslin*, originally *mosuline*, *i.e.*, cloth of Mosul. The site of *Nineveh* is supposed to have been at the junction of the Great Zab with the Tigris. The towns on the Euphrates are all small. *Hillah*, with a population of 16,000, is near the site of ancient Babylon.

SYRIA.—*Damascus*, *Aleppo*, and *Jerusalem* are the principal towns. Jerusalem has a population of about 20,000, and is chiefly dependent on the pilgrims who visit the holy places. The principal building is the Mosque of Omar, which occupies the site of Solomon's temple. The port of Jerusalem is *Jaffa*; that of Damascus is *Beyrout*. *Aleppo* occupies the site of the ancient *Berœa*, on the caravan-route between

---

138.—1. Name the two Mahometan races, and state where they predominate respectively. 2. Name the two principal Christian races, and state where they are most numerous. 3. Name the two largest towns. 4. On what does their prosperity depend respectively? 5. Name the only art in which the Turks rival Europeans.

Bagdad and Constantinople. *Antioch*, on the Orontes, west of Aleppo, has about 20,000 inhabitants. On the coast, *Latakia* occupies the site of *Laodicea*. *Sidon* and *Tyre* lie farther south. The former has a few thousand inhabitants; the latter consists of about a dozen wretched fishermen's huts. In the very midst of the Syrian desert are the ruins of *Palmyra*, the *Tadmor* of the Old Testament (1 Kings ix. 18); and due west from Palmyra, near the highest part of Lebanon, are the ruins of *Baalbec*, the ancient Heliopolis, or City of the Sun.

ARABIA.

Area, 1,200,000 square miles, ten times that of the British Isles.

Population, Six millions, twice that of Scotland.

140. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The coasts of the Arabian peninsula are low and flat. The interior consists of table-lands (sect. 32), sloping, on the whole, towards the Persian Gulf and the Euphrates. The highest mountains skirt the western and southern shores. Mount Sinai is situated in the peninsula formed by the Gulfs of Akaba and Suez. The whole surface is sandy, and there is not a single river of any commercial importance. Coffee is the chief export. Dates, rice, and maize are also principal productions.

141. INHABITANTS.—The inhabitants are Arabs by race, and Mahometans in religion. They are divisible into townsmen, peasants, *i.e.*, cultivators of the soil, and wandering shepherds, called Bedouins. The largest town in Arabia is *Muscat* (pop. 60,000), in the south-eastern corner. It is the capital of a sovereign called Imaum, who rules not only over the south-eastern corner of Arabia, but also over the eastern coast of

---

139.—1. Name the two chief seaports, one being on the Black Sea, the other on the Archipelago. 2. Name two places on the Archipelago, anciently famous, which are now miserable villages. 3. Of what two places on the shore of the Levant may the same be said? 4. Name three towns on the Tigris, one of them being the place to which it is navigable (sect. 135). 5. Whereabouts did Nineveh and Babylon respectively stand? 6. Name the three principal towns in Syria. 7. Which are the ports of Damascus and Jerusalem respectively? 8. What towns now stand where Beræa and Laodicea anciently stood? 9. Where are the ruins of Palmyra and Baalbec respectively situated?

140.—1. Describe the conformation of Arabia. 2. Mention its principal productions. 3. Between what two gulfs does Mount Sinai stand?

Africa, from Cape Guardafui to Cape Delgado. The next largest towns are near the coast of the Red Sea, a district which acknowledges the sovereignty of the Sultan. The most important of these towns are *Mecca*, the birthplace of Mahomet; *Medina*, his burial-place; and *Mocha*, a seaport, which gives name to the finest coffee. Excepting in these two districts, the inhabitants are ruled by petty chieftains called *sheikhs*. *Aden*, outside the Straits of Babelmandeb, is a British station.

PERSIA.

Area, 450,000 square miles, nearly four times that of the British Isles.
Population, Ten millions, one-half that of England and Wales.

142. BIRD'S-EYE VIEW.—The conformation of Persia is similar to that of Arabia. Its two maritime plains present a perfect contrast; that along the Persian Gulf being so parched, that the date tree is almost its only vegetable product, whilst that along the Caspian Sea, owing to the moderate temperature and abundant moisture, is exceedingly fertile. The table-lands (sect. 32) of the interior are traversed by mountains, and many of them are saline deserts. Almost all the lakes, including Ooroomiah, by far the largest one, are salt. The highest peak is Demavend (nearly 15,000 feet high), one of the Elburz range, which skirts the Caspian plain.

143. INHABITANTS.—The Persians excel other oriental nations in learning and politeness. About two millions of the inhabitants are wandering shepherds; but agriculture flourishes wherever water can be had, and manufactures are extensive enough to create large centres of population. The sword blades and carpets of Persia are unsurpassed. By far the largest town is

---

141.—1. Mention the race and the religion of the inhabitants. 2. What sort of Arabs are the Bedouins? 3. Over what countries does the Imaum of Muscat rule? 4. What district in Arabia forms part of the Turkish empire? 5. What two towns are reckoned holy places by all Mahometans? 6. Who are the *sheikhs*? 7. Whereabouts in Arabia is there a British station? 8. Opposite what countries, east from Arabia, are the Gulf of Ormus and the Persian Gulf respectively?

142.—1. Contrast the two maritime plains of Persia. 2. Mention the largest lake and the highest mountain in Persia.

in the very heart of the country, *Ispahan* (pop. 180,000). It is situated in a very fertile plain, 4000 feet above the sea-level. Most of the other remarkable places are nearly in the same meridian as Ispahan. They are, northwards, *Teheran*, the capital; and, southwards, *Persepolis*, where are ruins of Darius' palace, to which Alexander the Great set fire in a moment of frenzy; *Schiraz*, situated in a plain of proverbial beauty and fertility; and *Bushire*, the principal seaport of Persia. The Persians are Mahometans, and the government is a military despotism.

AFFGHANISTAN.

Area, 225,000 square miles, nearly twice that of the British Isles.

Population, Five millions, intermediate between that of Scotland and Ireland.

144. Affghanistan is wholly mountainous, and is rich in minerals, particularly iron, which is exported to India. The inhabitants are Mahometans. They are divided into a multitude of tribes, each acknowledging the authority of its own *khan*, and owning but a loose allegiance to the sovereign of the whole country, who resides at *Cabool*. The occupations deemed most honourable are those of priest and soldier. Persians and Hindus are numerous in the towns. The principal towns are on the caravan-routes from Persia to Hindustan. They are, besides Cabool, *Herat* on the Persian frontier, and *Kandahar*, which is as large as Cabool (pop. 60,000). Kandahar is on the southern caravan-route, which enters Hindustan by the Bolan pass; the two other towns are on the northern caravan-route, which enters Hindustan by the Khyber pass.

143.—1. In what two respects are the Persians distinguished above their neighbours? 2. What are the two articles in the manufacture of which they excel? 3. How many of the inhabitants live like Bedouins (sect. 141)? 4. Name the largest town, the modern capital, and the chief seaport. 5. What is to be seen at Persepolis? 6. Mention two fertile plains in the interior.

144.—1. Name the three principal towns in Affghanistan. 2. Which of them is the capital? 3. Which of them is on a different caravan-route from the other two? 4. What occupations are deemed most honourable among the Affghans? 5. Of what nature is their religion and government?

BELOOCHISTAN.

Area, 160,000 square miles, nearly three times that of England.
Population, Half a million, one sixth that of Scotland.

145. The conformation of Beloochistan is the same as that of Persia. Its sandy sea-shore, like that along the Persian Gulf, produces nothing but dates. The inhabitants resemble the Affghans in religion and government. The khan of *Kelat* (pop. 10,000) is only the nominal sovereign of the whole country.

HINDUSTAN.

Area, 1,484,000 square miles, more than twelve times that of the British Isles.
Population, One hundred and eighty-five millions, six and a half times that of the British Isles.

146. Bird's-eye View.—Hindustan is naturally divided into two basins and two table-lands. The basins are watered, one by the Ganges and Jumna, the other by the Indus and Sutlej. The Ganges and the Indus rise in glaciers of the Himalaya, but on opposite sides of the range. Both are navigable to the southern base of the mountains, the Ganges to *Hurdwar*, the Indus to *Attock;* and each has a delta, the navigation of which is extremely difficult. The two basins almost meet above *Delhi;* certain tributaries of the Jumna and Sutlej being there within two miles of each other. The surface at that part is not 1000 feet above the ocean-level, which shows how very low both basins lie. The basin of the Ganges is fertile throughout; and the only unhealthy part is the lower delta, called Sunderbunds, which nevertheless abounds with deer and tigers, and supplies *Calcutta* with firewood. The basin of the Indus, from the delta to the Sutlej, is a sandy desert, except along the immediate banks of the river. Above the junction of the Sutlej with the Indus, the country is beautifully varied and moderately fertile.

145.—1. Which of the Persian maritime plains (sect. 142) is that of Beloochistan like? 2. In what two respects do the inhabitants of Beloochistan resemble those of Affghanistan?

This district is called *Punjaub*, i.e., *Five Rivers*, these being the Indus, the Jelum, the Chenab, the Ravee, and the Sutlej. It includes the famous valley of Cashmere. The Ganges is a little shorter, and the Indus a little longer, than the Danube, the second of European rivers (sect. 40). The Brahmapootra, traced along its chief tributary, the Sanpoo, is as long as the Danube, 1770 miles. The table-lands (sect. 32) occupy the greater part of the peninsula south of the two river-basins. The northern table-land is a triangular district, flanked on two sides by the Aravulli and Vindhya mountains, and sloping towards the Jumna on the third. The southern, and by much the larger, called the Deccan, is enclosed by the eastern and western Ghauts, and slopes towards the Bay of Bengal, which receives many considerable rivers from it. Some of these rivers pass through the eastern Ghauts, which, unlike the western, are far from continuous. The western Ghauts are higher than the eastern, and the Nilgherries, in which both ranges meet, are higher than either, reaching an elevation of nearly 9000 feet.

147. NATURAL FEATURES—

West Coast. *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*	*Interior.* *Mountains and Lakes.*	*East Coast.* *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
River Indus.	Himalaya Mountains.	River Ganges.
,, Sutlej.		,, Burhampooter.
	Hindoo Coosh.	
	Soliman Mountains.	
Gulf & Runn of Cutch	Aravulli ,,	River Jumna.
River Nerbudda.	Vindhy ,,	,, Hoogly.
Gulf of Cambay.	Lake Chilka.	Cape Palmyras.
		River Mahanuddy.
River Taptee.		,, Godavery.
Arabian Sea.	Ghauts Mountains.	Bay of Bengal.
Salsette Island.		River Kristna.
Laccadive Islands.		Andaman Islands.

146.—1. What are the four natural divisions of Hindustan? 2. Mention two points of similarity in the navigation of the Ganges and Indus. 3. Mention a fact showing that no mountain range connects the table-lands of the peninsula with the Himalaya. 4. Where and of what use are the Sunderbunds? 5. Which of the river basins is the most fertile throughout? 6. Name the five rivers of the Punjaub. 7. Compare the Ganges, the Indus, and the Burhampooter with the Danube in respect of length. 8. What mountain-ranges flank the northern table-land? 9. What mountains enclose the Deccan on all sides but one? 10. Towards what do the two table-lands respectively slope?

West Coast. *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*	*Interior.* *Mountains and Lakes.*	*East Coast.* *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
	Nilgherry Mountains.	River Cauvery.
	Lake Backwater.	Palk's Straits.
		Gulf of Manaar.
Cape Comorin.		Nicobar Islands.
Maldive Islands.	Adam's Peak.	Ceylon Island.
		Dondra Head.

148. Climate and Productions.—The Tropic of Cancer divides Hindustan nearly into two; moreover, it is sheltered from the northern winds by the Himalaya and the Hindoo Coosh: intense heat, accordingly, prevails throughout the two river-basins, and along all the coasts. The hottest region of all is the Carnatic, on the Coromandel coast. Winter is known only among the Nilgherry mountains, and in the more elevated valleys along the northern frontier. The Cashmere winter is severer than that of Lombardy; snow has been known to lie in it for four consecutive months. The productions of the lowlands are those of tropical countries in general. The exports to Britain consist chiefly of rice, opium, coffee, tea, silk, cotton, flax, hemp, and indigo.

149. Inhabitants.—Hindustan is, next to China, the most densely-peopled country on the globe. All the inhabitants belong to the Caucasian race (sect. 20); but they differ immensely in nationality, language, and religion. There are at least thirty distinct nations and languages. The broadest distinction is that of religion. The great majority are Brahminical Hindus, who entertain a superstitious veneration for the Ganges. The most sacred spots are those where affluents join it, as at *Allahabad*; those where it happens to flow northwards; and *Hurdwar* (sect. 146), where it issues forth from the mountains. The Mahometans,

---

147.—(See sect. 46.) 1. What two ranges meet in the Hindoo Coosh? 2. Name the gulf and the straits separating Ceylon from the mainland. 3. Where are Cape Comorin and Dondra Head respectively? 4. What two countries are conterminous with Hindustan on the west? 5. What empire bounds it on the east? 6. What are the only two lakes in Hindustan?

148.—1. Where is the hottest region? 2. What is the only part of Hindustan within the torrid zone, which has a decided winter? 3. Describe winter in the Cashmere valley. 4. Mention four exports from India of which cloth is made. 5. Mention three which are used for human food or drink. 6. Mention one used by dyers, and another used by druggists.

who number about 15,000,000, are spread over the northern and central provinces. Buddhism prevails only in Bhotan, Aracan, and Ceylon. Christians form one-eighth of the population in the native state of Travancore, and they are still more numerous in the Portuguese possession of Goa. Education is general, though of inferior quality.

150. GOVERNMENT.—Those parts of Hindustan which are immediately under British rule, *i.e.*, the three Presidencies of Bengal, Madras, and Bombay, comprise more than half the area, and more than three-fourths of the population of all India. They cover the whole sea-board from the frontier of Beloochistan to 11° N. lat., on the western side of the peninsula of Malacca, except where the coast of the British provinces is interrupted, along the Arabian Sea, by the native States of Travancore, Cochin, Guzerat, Cutch, and by the Portuguese territory of Goa. Goa and Lake Chilka divide this extensive sea-board into three sections: that between Beloochistan and Goa belongs to the Presidency of Bombay; that between Goa and Lake Chilka, to the Presidency of Madras; and the remaining one to the Presidency of Bengal. This last mentioned Presidency greatly surpasses the others in area, population, and resources. Its capital, *Calcutta*, is also the seat of goverment for all India. No towns compete with the capitals of the three Presidencies in population and importance:—

Bombay, 566,000. Madras, 420,000. Calcutta, 413,000.

The Eastern Settlements below 11° N. lat., in the peninsula of Malacca, and the island of Ceylon, are not connected with any of the Presidencies: the former are subject only to the Government of India; the latter is subject only to the Colonial Department of the British Administration. Of the native States, amounting in all to about 400, Nepaul is the only considerable one that has retained its independence; most of the others are subject States, acknowledging the supremacy of the British Government, and receiving its protection in return.

149.—1. How many distinct nations and languages are there in Hindustan? 2. What is the prevailing religion? 3. At what three places, or sorts of places, is the Ganges deemed most sacred? 4. Where are Mahometans the most numerous? 5. In what three provinces does Buddhism prevail?

150.—1. How is the sea-board of India divided among the three Presidencies? 2. Mention the only portions of it that do not belong to British provinces. 3. In

151. TOPOGRAPHICAL DETAILS—

1. PRESIDENCY OF BENGAL.—(*a.*) The Lower Provinces comprise both banks of the Ganges up to the junction of the Gogra; Cuttack, which includes the delta of the Mahanuddy; Assam, divided by the Brahmapootra into two nearly equal parts; and the districts of Chittagong and Aracan, on the eastern coast of the Bay of Bengal. Next to *Calcutta*, on the Hoogly branch of the Ganges, the largest town is *Patna* (pop. 284,000), on the Ganges, near the junction of the Gogra. *Pooree* (pop. 30,000), near Lake Chilka, contains the famous temple and car of Juggurnauth. (*b.*) The North-western Provinces occupy only the more immediate basin of the Ganges and Jumna, from the junction of the Gogra upwards to where Oude is left behind, after which they expand toward the Himalaya. The principal towns are: on the Ganges, *Benares*, pop. 180,000, and *Cawnpore*, pop. 118,000,—the former a sacred city with the Hindus, the latter memorable on account of the massacre of British women and children, by order of Nana Sahib, in 1857; on the Jumna, *Agra*, pop. 125,000, and *Delhi*, pop. 152,000; at the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna, *Allahabad*, pop. 80,000; on the western Ramgunga, a tributary of the Ganges, *Bareilly*, pop. 111,000. (*c.*) Oude, situated between the North-western Provinces, where they are narrowest, and Nepaul—capital, *Lucknow*, pop. 300,000, on the Goomty, a tributary of the Ganges. (*d.*) Cis-Sutlej Territory, lying beyond the North-western Provinces, and sloping mainly towards the Sutlej—chief town, *Loodiana*, pop. 50,000. (*e.*) The Punjaub—chief towns, *Lahore*, on the Ravee; *Amritsir*, on a canal betwixt the Ravee and the Beas, the chief tributary of the Sutlej; and *Mooltan*, near the Chenab, each with a population somewhat under 100,000; also *Peshawer*, situated near the entrance to the Khyber Pass, the principal northern route to Affghanistan. (*f.*) Nagpore, an elevated tract sloping almost wholly along the Gunga, and other tributaries to the left bank of the Godavery—chief town, *Nagpore*, pop. 112,000. For Pegu and Tenasserim, see p. 114.

2. PRESIDENCIES of MADRAS and BOMBAY. No towns approach the two capitals in population and importance. *Madras* has only a roadstead, but *Bombay* derives its very name from the excellence of its harbour, formed by several islands, on one of which it is built. It was ceded to Great Britain by the Portuguese, as part of Catharine's dowry, when she was married to Charles II. They had called it *Bom Bahia*, i.e. *Good Bay*. In Scinde, the country of the Lower Indus, politically connected with the Bombay Presidency, are three small but important towns, viz., *Hydrabad*, the ancient capital, at the head of the delta; *Shikarpoor*, situated near the entrance of the Bolan Pass, the principal southern route to Affghanistan; and *Kurrachee*, a

---

what respect are the towns of Calcutta and Bombay severally pre-eminent? 4. For what is Nepaul remarkable among the native states? 5. What two British possessions are not politically connected with any of the presidencies? 6. To what are they respectively subordinate?

seaport near the Beloochistan frontier, which promises to become the Liverpool of India. At present none of these towns have more than 30,000 inhabitants.

3. NATIVE STATES.—The principal are: (*a.*) Of those connected with the Presidency of Bengal,—Bhotan, Sikim, Nepaul, and Cashmere, on the southern slope of the Himalaya; Rajpootana, Gwalior or Scindiah's dominions, Bundelcund, Indore or Holcar's dominions, lying between the Lower Sutlej and the Nerbudda, including, therefore, the Aravulli and Vindhya Mountains; also Hyderabad or the Nizam's dominions, stretching from the left bank of the Middle Kristna to beyond the Godavery. The only large town in these native States is *Hyderabad*, the capital of the Nizam's dominions, pop. 200,000. (*b.*) Of those connected with the Presidency of Madras—the inland State of Mysore, and the maritime States of Travancore and Cochin. (*c.*) Of those connected with the Presidency of Bombay—Guzerat and Cutch. The former is divided between the numerous chieftainships of Kattiwar, and the dominions of the Guicowar, whose capital is *Baroda*, pop. 140,000, situated at the western extremity of the Vindhya Mountains.

152. ISLANDS.—The pear-shaped island of Ceylon is by far the largest. It is mountainous, well watered, and fertile; but the wooded parts are unhealthy. *Kandy* was formerly the capital; the present capital is *Colombo*, pop. 30,000, situated in a neighbourhood which grows the finest quality of cinnamon. The Laccadive and Maldive Islands, off the coast of Malabar, are merely the highest parts of coral banks, that have been covered with sand and vegetation. The King of Delhi was banished to one of the Andamans, for countenancing the insurrection of the Sepoys in 1857. These three groups, as also the Nicobar Islands, abound with cocoa-nut palms.

151.—1. At what point on the Ganges do the North-western provinces begin? 2. Name three great rivers which reach the sea in the Lower provinces. 3. What rivers traverse Scinde, Assam, and Cuttack respectively? 4. Where are the temple and car of Juggurnauth? 5. What town stands at the confluence of the Ganges and Jumna? 6. Name three towns on the Ganges above Calcutta. 7. Name two towns on the Jumna. 8. Name the four principal towns of the Punjaub. 9. Name three important places in Scinde. 10. Name the two principal passes through the Suliman mountains to Affghanistan. 11. Name the five native states on the southern slopes of the Himalaya. 12. Name the three native states which belong to the Presidency of Madras. 13. How is Guzerat divided?

152.—1. Name the ancient capital and the modern capital of Ceylon. 2. How do they differ in respect of situation? 3. What is the natural history of the two groups off the Malabar coast? 4. To which group was the King of Delhi banished? 5. Which group in the Bay of Bengal is in the same latitude with the Laccadives?

SOUTH-EASTERN PENINSULA.

Pop. 17 millions, 8 millions less than that of England and Wales.

153. Bird's-eye View.—Mountain ranges traverse the South-eastern Peninsula from north to south, and divide it into a series of valleys, narrow in comparison with their length. The Irawady and Meinam are the great fertilizers and commercial highways of Birmah and Siam respectively. The Thaleain separates Birmah from Siam and Laos. The Maykiang traverses Laos, and Cambodia the southern province of the Annamese empire. The mountains, which separate the Thaleain from the Meinam, run through the whole peninsula of Malacca. The majority of the inhabitants of the South-eastern Peninsula are a mixture of the Mongolian and Caucasian races (sect. 20). The dialects spoken have much in common with those of China and Thibet; Buddhism is the prevalent religion; and despotism the form of all the governments. In many districts the people are barbarous, and civilisation, wherever it exists, is far behind that of Hindustan and China.

154. Divisions and Towns—

Birmah, pop. 2,000,000.—Deprived of the maritime province called Pegu, since 1852, Birmah is now confined to the inland territory of Birmah proper, also called *Ava*, from the capital, on the Irawady.

Siam, pop. 3,000,000.—Capital and chief sea-port, *Bankok*, at the mouth of the Meinam.

Laos, pop. 1,000,000.—Capital, *Changmai*, on the Meinam.

Empire of Annam, pop. 9,000,000.—Cochin-China, the central province; capital and residence of the Emperor, *Hue:* Tonquin, the northern province; capital, *Ketsho*, the largest city in the empire. *Saigon*, capital of Cambodia, the southern province, with an adjoining territory containing about 2,000,000 souls, is now a French possession.

British Provinces.—(*a.*) Subject to the Presidency of Bengal, Pegu, a maritime region on the Lower Irawady; chief ports, *Rangoon* and *Martaban*. Tenasserim, another maritime region, extending from Pegu to 11° N. lat. on the peninsula of Malacca; chief town, *Moulmein*, opposite Martaban. (*b.*) The Eastern Settlements, consisting of Prince of Wales Island or Penang, Wellesley Province opposite the former, Malacca farther south, and Singapore, an island at the extreme point of the peninsula. The town of *Singapore* is a great emporium of trade. *Georgetown*, the capital of Penang, is the seat of Government for the Eastern Settlements.

153.—1. Describe the configuration of the South-eastern Peninsula. 2. Name the four principal rivers. 3. To what countries is the Thaleain a boundary? 4. What countries are watered by the Irawady and Meinam? 5. What is the prevalent religion and form of government? 6. Wherein do the races and dialects of the South-eastern Peninsula correspond to its position in the map of Asia?

154.—1. What are the capitals of Birmah, Siam, and Laos respectively? 2. On what rivers do they stand? 3. Name the three provinces into which the Empire of Annam is divided. 4. What are their capitals respectively? 5. What British province was taken from Birmah in 1852? 6. Name the four Eastern Settlements.

CHINA.

Area, 1,700,000 square miles, nearly half that of Europe.

Population, 360 millions, more than half that of all Asia.

155. Bird's-eye View.—China consists of several great river-basins with an eastern aspect, the water-sheds of which become mountainous towards their western extremity, but subside towards the sea, so as to allow the several basins to form one continuously low and level shore. The chief of these river-basins are those of the Yang-tse-kiang and Hoang-ho rivers. The former of these rivers is both larger and slower than the latter. The surface of the maritime plain is in many places lower than the Hoang-ho (sects. 83, 112), which is carefully embanked. Mountains prevail west of 112°. East of that meridian lies the more fertile half of China, divided by the Yang-tse-kiang into two, a very fertile grain country extending northwards to Peiho, the nearest river to *Pekin*, and a more variegated country, in which are the tea-growing districts, extending southwards to Choo-kiang, the river of *Canton*. The northern frontier, towards Mongolia and Manchooria, runs along the famous Chinese wall, which was built in the third century as a defence against the Tartars; it is now falling into ruin. Of the two largest islands along the coast, Hainan and Formosa, the former is barren, and the latter fertile. Both are mountainous in the interior.

156. Inhabitants.—The Chinese are a civilized Mongolian race (sect. 20); their civilisation is remarkable both for antiquity and stationariness. For two thousand years canals have been in operation among them, yet, instead of locks, they still make use of inclined plains and rollers, by means of which boats are raised, or let down from one level to another. Chinese industry

---

155.—1. Describe the configuration of China. 2. In what direction is the inland boundary natural, and in what direction is it artificial? 3. Name the two principal rivers. 4. Does the larger one flow north or south of the smaller? 5. In what respect does the surface of China, in certain parts, resemble that of Holland and Lombardy? 6. Between what two rivers is the best grain district? 7. Between what two rivers are the tea-growing districts? 8. How far westwards do these districts extend? 9. What countries are separated from China by the famous wall? 10. Name the two largest islands. 11. Mention one respect in which they agree, and another in which they differ.

is proverbial, especially in agriculture, which is deemed the most honourable employment after learning. Rice is the favourite grain in the lower grounds, wheat in the higher; in some places the same ground produces both in one year, rice in the hot season, and wheat in the cool. In every part of China, except the extreme south, there is a cold season. Snow has been known to fall even at Canton, which is within the tropics; and it lies for three consecutive months around *Pekin*, which is in the latitude of central Spain. Buddhism is the religion of the masses; the learned follow the system of Confucius. But among all classes the most sacred act of worship is the presentation of offerings at the tomb of departed relatives. The government is despotic.

157. REMARKABLE PLACES—*Pekin*, the capital, pop. 1,000,000, situated in a sandy plain, 14 miles from the Peiho, was taken by the allied English and French in October 1860. *Pehtang*, 12 miles from the mouth of the Peiho, where the allied troops landed. *Tientsin*, on the Peiho, 50 miles from its mouth, the granary of the capital. *Nankin*, a great manufacturing city on the Yang-tse-kiang, was the capital till 1421. Besides the five ports of *Canton*, *Amoy*, *Foo-choo-foo*, *Ningpo*, and *Shanghai*, three towns on the Yang-tse-kiang are now open to foreign traders, viz., *Chin-kiang*, *Kew-kiang*, and *Hang-kow*, the last being 570 miles from the river's mouth. At the mouth of the Choo-kiang, or Canton river, is *Hong-Kong* island, a British possession, to which was added in 1860 the peninsula of *Kowloon*, forming the northern side of the harbour of *Victoria*, as the capital of Hong-Kong is called. On another island is the town of *Macao*, a Portuguese possession.

158. CHINESE EMPIRE.—In respect of space, China proper is little more than one-third of the Chinese Empire, which occupies the whole of Central Asia, from Turkestan to the Pacific, being bounded on the north by the Altai mountains, the river Amour, and its affluent, the Oussouri (*see* note, p. 99). This immense

---

156.—1. Of what race and religion are the masses? 2. What is deemed the most sacred act of worship? 3. Mention an instance of stationariness in Chinese civilisation. 4. What occupations occupy severally the first and second ranks of honour? 5. What two kinds of grain are most cultivated? 6. Whether has Pekin or London the severer winter? 7. On which of them do the sun's rays fall most directly.

157.—1. On what rivers do Pekin, Nankin, and Canton respectively stand? 2. Name four ports, besides Canton, where foreigners are allowed to trade. 3. Which of them is the principal seat of native trade? 4. What Chinese town has given a word to the English language? 5. What possessions have Britain and Portugal respectively on the coast of China?

region is peopled by semi-barbarous tribes, chiefly Mongolian, and professing some sort of Buddhism. Taken together, they do not amount to twenty millions, which is but a small addition, comparatively, to the population of China proper. The subject territories are—

1. COREA, a mountainous peninsula with its chief slope towards the Yellow Sea; chief town, *King-ki-too.*

2. MANCHOORIA, consisting of two regions, which are separated from one another by a continuation of the Corean range, and slope, the one towards the Amour, the other towards the sea of Japan; chief town, *Moukden.*

3. MONGOLIA, the northern part of Central Asia, separated from Manchooria by the Khin-ghan mountains, and comprising the great desert of Gobi; chief town, *Ourga.*

4. THIBET, the southern part of Central Asia, lying between the Himalaya and Quan-lun ranges; chief towns, *Lassa,* the capital of Upper Thibet, and *Ladakh,* the capital of Middle Thibet.*

5. LITTLE BOKHARA, that part of Central Asia which lies between the Quan-lun and Thian-chan ranges; chief towns, *Cashgar* and *Yarkand.*

---

* Since 1835, Middle Thibet has formed part of Gholab Singh's dominions, *i.e.,* of the Kingdom of Cashmere, India.

JAPAN.

Population, Twenty-five millions, nearly equal to that of the British Isles.

159. The empire of Japan consists wholly of islands, the largest being Yeso, Niphon, Sikoke and Kiu-siu. These islands are all mountainous, and some of the highest summits are active volcanoes. The climate of Yeso is so severe as to forbid agri-

---

158.—1. How many times greater is the Chinese empire than China proper? 2. Describe Central Asia physically (sect. 126). 3. What large island is situated at the mouth of the river which separates the Chinese possessions from the Russian? 4. Where is the Gulf of Tartary? 5. Between what two seas is the peninsula of Corea? 6. What territories are separated from each other by the Khin-ghan mountains? 7. Name two mountain ranges intermediate between the Altai and Himalaya. 8. What country lies between these intermediate ranges? 9. Name the principal river and lake in that country. 10. Name the two chief towns of that country. 11. In which of the subject territories do several rivers of the south-eastern peninsula take their rise? 12. What are the chief towns of Mongolia, Manchooria, and Corea respectively? 13. Name the two chief towns of Thibet.

culture; but in the southern half of the empire the heat of summer is sufficient even for the growth of rice, which is the principal food of the Japanese. The most important of the islands, in every respect, is Niphon. It contains the two principal towns, *Jedo* (pop. 2,000,000) and *Meaco*. The emperor, called Tycoon, resides at Jedo, which is the political capital, and the larger of the two. Meaco is the chief seat of learning and religion. The inhabitants differ from the Chinese in language; but resemble them in religion, government, and civilisation. The cottons, silks, porcelain, and japanned ware of the Japanese islands are not inferior to those of China.

159.—1. Name the largest four of the Japanese islands. 2. In which of them are the two largest towns? 3. Distinguish these towns by name and character. 4. Describe the surface and climate of the islands. 5. In what three respects do the Japanese resemble the Chinese? 6. Mention four manufactured articles in which both nations excel.

AFRICA.

Area, 11,000,000 square miles, nearly three times that of Europe.

Population, Eighty millions, more than one-fourth that of Europe.

160. Bird's-eye View.—Africa has no large inlets of the sea breaking up its solid mass into peninsulas. Mountain-ranges run along a great extent of its sea-board: witness the Atlas Mountains along the Mediterranean, the Hong Mountains in Guinea, and the Lupata Mountains along the whole south-eastern coast. One result of this conformation is, that large rivers are few, and that many are navigable only a short way on account of cataracts. The largest and most useful of the African rivers are the Nile and Niger. Central Africa resembles Central Asia (sect. 126) by absorbing or evaporating most of its own drainage, and by the presence of a great desert, called Sahara, the largest in the world. There are oases in this desert, where the presence of water creates fertility and shade. The largest of these oases is Fezzan. But for these oases the desert would be literally uninhabitable. So numerous are the lakes and dry hollows in a long line running north-west and south-east of Lake Tchad, that the greater part of Central Africa is supposed by some to have been once a lake. Southern Africa is an island in the same sense as Thanet, Kent. It is separated from the rest of Africa by the rivers Zambezi and Congo, which, originating behind Angola, in the same Lake Dilolo, flow to opposite coasts (sect. 169).

161. Countries of Africa with their Population and Chief Towns—

160.—1. Mention three mountain ranges in Africa which run parallel to the coast, and near it. 2. Name the two most important rivers. 3. What is there in the conformation of Africa to diminish the navigability of its rivers? 4 In what two respects does Central Africa resemble Central Asia? 5. Name the great desert in each. 6. How is it that any inhabitants at all can live in the African desert? 7. In what respect does the outline of Africa markedly differ from that of Europe? 8. In what direction do the lakes of Central Africa succeed each other? 9. Describe the singular water system of which Lake Dilolo is the summit-level.

Countries.	Population.	Chief Towns.
Egypt,	5,000,000	Cairo, on the Nile; Alexandria.
Nubia,	3,000,000	Khartoum, on the Nile.
Abyssinia,	3,000,000	
Ter. of the White Nile,	5,000,000	
Tripoli,	1,400,000	Tripoli, on the Mediterranean.
Fezzan,	100,000	Mourzouk.
Tunis,	2,000,000	Tunis, on the Mediterranean.
Algeria,	3,250,000	Algiers, on the Mediterranean.
Morocco,	8,000,000	Morocco, Mequinez, Fez.
Soudan,	10,000,000	Digoa, Angornou, in the Lake Tchad District; Sego, Jenneh, Timbuctoo, with Isaca its port, Yaouri, and Boussa, on the Niger.
Cape Colony, &c., see p. 125,	500,000	Cape Town, Graham's Town.
Eastern Coast,	10,000,000	Senna, on the Zambezi.
Western Coast,	10,000,000	St. Louis, Sierra Leone, Liberia.
Unexplored interior,	15,000,000	
Madagascar,	3,750,000	Tananarivo, Tamatave.
	80,000,000	

Abyssinia and Soudan are divided among a great number of petty sovereigns.

162. NATURAL FEATURES—

Coasts of the Mediterranean and Atlantic. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*Coasts of the Red Sea and Indian Ocean. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
River Nile.		Gulf of Suez.
Gulf of Sidra.		
Gulf of Cabes.		Dhalak Island.
Cape Bon.		Perim ,,
Straits of Gibraltar.	Atlas Mountains.	Straits of Babelmandeb.
Cape Spartel.	Donga ,,	Cape Guardafui.
Madeira Island.		Socotra Island.
Cape Cantin.		
,, Nun.		
Canaries.		
Cape Bojador.		
,, Blanco.		
,, Verde.		
Cape Verde Islands.		

161.—See sect. 87. 1. Name the five countries bordering on the Mediterranean. 2. Name the three capitals situated on the coast of that sea.

Coasts of the Mediterranean and Atlantic. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*Coasts of the Red Sea and Indian Ocean. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Cape Palmas.		
,, Three Points.	Kong Mountains.	
,, Coast Castle.		
River Niger.		River Magadoxo.
Gulf of Guinea.	Lake Tchad.	
Bight of Benin.		
Bight of Biafra.		
Fernando Po Island.	Cameroon Mountains.	Pemba Island.
Prince's ,,	Victoria Nyanza Lake.	Zanzibar ,,
St. Thomas ,,	Donga Mountains.	Seychelles Islands.
Annobon ,,		Amirante ,,
River Gaboon.	Lake Tanganyika.	River Quilimani.
Cape Lopez.		Cape Delgado.
River Zaire or Congo.	Lake Nyassa.	River Zambezi.
Ascension Island.	,, Dilolo.	Comoro Islands.
St. Helena ,,		Madagascar Island.
	Lupata Mountains.	Mozambique Channel.
		Cape Corrientes.
Ichaboe Island.		Mauritius Island.
Angra Pequem Island.		Bourbon ,,
River Orange or Gariep.		Delagoa Bay.
Table Bay.	Lake Ngami.	Algoa Bay.
Cape of Good Hope.		Cape das Agulhas.
		False Bay.

163. INHABITANTS.—The hottest places on the globe are in Africa; not, however, in the equatorial region, where the surface is cooled by tropical rains, and luxuriant vegetation, but in the rainless and treeless desert of Sahara, traversed by the Tropic of Cancer. The ancients supposed Central Africa to be uninhabitable, on account of the heat; but every new expedition into the interior proves the greatness of this mistake. Northern Africa, from the Mediterranean to the Highlands of

---

162.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Mention three capes in Morocco. 2. To which of the gulfs, Sidra and Cabes, is Cape Bon nearest? 3. What islands are opposite Cape Nun? 4. Name three capes on the coast of Guinea. 5. Name four islands in the Gulf of Guinea. 6. What two bays are on opposite sides of the Cape of Good Hope? 7. Name two islands in the Red Sea. 8. What capes on the mainland are nearly opposite the northern and southern extremities of Madagascar? 9. Name the capes at these extremities of Madagascar. 10. Name two groups of islands lying to the north of Madagascar. 11. What two islands lie to the east of Madagascar?

Abyssinia, and the southern border of Sahara, along which the Niger flows, is occupied by tribes of the Caucasian race; the rest by negroes, excepting only the southern extremity, which is divided between Caffres and Hottentots. The Caffres are the manliest of all the non-Caucasian tribes in Africa. Besides a few Copts in Egypt, the only native Christians are the Abyssinians; their Christianity, however, is exceedingly corrupt. Mahometanism is professed not only by all the Caucasian tribes, except those of Abyssinia, but also by the negroes north of the Kong Mountains, and along the east coast as far south as Cape Delgado (sect. 141). Everywhere else the most brutish idolatry prevails. Civilisation is confined to the Caucasian nations; but its type is Asiatic rather than European. Slavery, for example, is sanctioned by law, and the inland trade in negroes is still carried on. Negro slaves used to be the most valuable article of export from Africa; but now the exports consist chiefly of gold dust, ivory, and palm oil. Morocco leather is the only article of African manufacture prized in Europe.

VALLEY OF THE NILE.

According to recent discoveries, the White Nile rises in the great equatorial lake called Victoria Nyanza, so that the entire length of the river is 2356 miles, or, following the principal windings 3300 miles. This long valley comprises Egypt, Nubia, Abyssinia, and a territory occupied by barbarous negro tribes.

164. Physical Description.—The Nile resembles the Indus (sect. 146) by receiving not a single affluent in the lower part of its course; on this account, and because the husbandmen of

---

163.—1. Where is the hottest region in Africa? 2. What two races occupy all but the southern extremity of Africa? 3. What two races divide the southern extremity between them? 4. Define the limits of the Caucasian race in Africa. 5. Which is the manliest of the non-Caucasian races? 6. Is Mahometanism more or less extensively distributed in Africa than the Caucasian race? 7. In what two countries are there tribes professing Christianity? 8. In what two districts are the negroes not idolaters? 9. To what race is civilisation confined? 10. Mention one respect in which said civilisation differs from that of Europe. 11. What are the three exports most characteristic of Africa? 12. Mention the single article of African manufacture which is prized in Europe.

Egypt draw off much of its water for irrigation, its volume becomes smaller and smaller from Thebes downwards. Above the frontier of Egypt and Nubia, where the first cataracts are, high banks prevent all inundation; but from that point downwards, the annual inundation, due to the tropical rains in Nubia and Abyssinia, overflows the valley to a distance of about five miles from the permanent channel on either side. The valley is enclosed by mountains running parallel with the river; and wherever the water of the Nile is not carried, either by the inundation or by artificial conduits, the surface is a parched desert. Egypt is a most productive grain country, rice, wheat, barley, and millet being the staples. Great quantities of cotton and sugar-cane are also grown. The parallel of 18° in Nubia is the limit of the tropical rains; and above that point, the Nile begins to receive affluents. Abyssinia is exceedingly mountainous; and, except in the lower grounds, which are hot and unhealthy, enjoys a bracing climate. The states of Abyssinia are all independent. Nubia is governed by the Pasha of Egypt, who again acknowledges the supremacy of the Sultan (sect. 124).

165. REMARKABLE PLACES.—North of latitude 18° there is almost no rain. Only four or five showers per annum fall at Cairo; and on the Nubian frontier, only one or two. Egypt and the northern half of Nubia are thus among the driest countries in the world: hence the wonderful preservation of ancient buildings, and even of the paintings upon them. Several places deserve notice, chiefly because of their proximity to ancient monuments; such is the village of *Gizeh*, near the pyramids; that of *Keneh*, near the ruins of *Denderah*, and not very far from the temples of *Carnac* and *Luxor*, the site of ancient *Thebes;* the town of *Assouan*, near the island of Elephantina, which is covered with ruins, Egyptian, Roman, Saracen, and Arab; and that of *Derr*, in lower Nubia, near the temple of Ipsamboul, which is cut out of the solid rock, and fronted by six colossal figures, each seventy feet high. The only places of

---

164.—1. What three countries are comprised in the valley of the Nile? 2. Which of them owns no allegiance to the Sultan? 3. In what respect does the Nile resemble the Indus? 4. Where are the first cataracts on the Nile? 5. What renders the parallel of 18° highly important in Nubia? 6. On what does the fertility of Egypt depend? 7. Is the greater part of its surface fertile or barren? 8. Name the four principal grains grown in the valley of the Nile. 9. Which is the most mountainous of the three countries in the valley of the Nile?

importance, at the present time, in the valley of the Nile, are on the railway which, crossing the Isthmus of Suez, forms the overland part of the quickest route to India. These are *Alexandria* (pop. 60,000), which, besides being the chief seat of commerce, has a naval arsenal and dockyard; *Cairo* (pop. 250,000), the capital of Egypt, and the largest town in all Africa; and *Suez*, which owes all the importance it has to its position in the overland route.

BARBARY STATES.

	Area.			*Population.*
TRIPOLI, .	300,000	sq. miles,	2½ times that of the British Isles, . .	1,400,000
TUNIS, . .	80,000	..	nearly equal to that of Great Britain, .	2,000,000
ALGERIA,	160,000	..	nearly one-half more than that of B. Isles,	3,250,000
MOROCCO,	290,000	..	nearly 2½ times that of the British Isles,	8,000,000
	830,000		seven times that of the British Isles.	14,650,000

166.—Tripoli, Tunis, Algeria, and Morocco are called the Barbary States, from the Berbers of the mountains, who are supposed to have been the original inhabitants of northern Africa. The towns of Barbary are inhabited chiefly by Moors, and the plains by Arabs. The coast, being defended from the hot winds of the desert by the Atlas Mountains, has an agreeable climate, and contains many fertile tracts. South of Atlas barrenness prevails, and the date-tree is the only useful growth. Tripoli and Tunis are, like Egypt, dependencies of the Turkish empire (sect. 124). Algeria has been a French colony since 1830 (sect. 103). Morocco is an independent empire, and by far the most populous of the Barbary States. For the important towns see sect. 161. The few remains of Carthage are in Tunis, on the peninsula which terminates in Cape Bon.

165.—1. Why are ancient buildings so well preserved in Egypt and part of Nubia? 2. What monuments are near to Gizeh and Keneh respectively? 3. What temples mark the site of ancient Thebes? 4. What island is covered with a great variety of ruins? 5. Mention the only great temple in Nubia, and the two circumstances for which it is remarkable. 6. Name the two termini, and the middle station on the railway which crosses the Isthmus of Suez.

166.—1. Name the four Barbary States. 2. Why are they so called? 3. Name the most populous one among them, and its three principal towns (sect. 161). 4. What races prevail in the towns, plains, and mountains respectively? 5. Mention the political relations of the Barbary States. 6. What religion prevails in them all? 7. Whereabouts was Carthage?

167. **Possessions of Foreign Powers.**—Egypt, Tripoli, and Tunis are dependencies of the Turkish Empire (sect. 124). The eastern coast, from Cape Guardafui to Cape Delgado, owns the sovereignty of the Imaum of Muscat in Arabia (sect. 141). The French possessions in Africa (sect. 103), besides Algeria, are some trading ports on the Senegal, of which St. Louis is the chief, and the islands of Bourbon and Comoro, near Madagascar. The Spaniards (sect. 108) hold a few stations on the coast of Morocco, of which Ceuta is the chief, and the Canary Islands. Portugal (sect. 109) owns, besides Madeira, the Cape Verde Islands, and the island of St. Thomas, a number of stations along the coast of Lower Guinea, on the western side of Africa, and of Mozambique on the eastern. The British possessions (sect. 64) comprise the colonies of the Cape, and of Natal in South Africa, two stations on the Gambia, four on the Gold Coast, Sierra Leone situated between these, Lagos in the Bight of Benin, the islands of Ascension and St. Helena in the Atlantic, the Mauritius and the Amirante and Seychelles groups near Madagascar. Cape Colony is by far the most important of the British possessions: it sends home great quantities of wool and wine.*

ISLANDS.

168.—Madagascar is by far the largest. It is extremely mountainous, as are also the Comoros on the one side, Mauritius and Bourbon on the other. These all produce abundance of colonial produce, especially sugar. The Amirante and Seychelles groups are low and insignificant. Socotra is famous for aloes and gums. The islands in the Bight of Biafra are all mountainous; one of them, Fernando Po, is often visited for change of air by Europeans from the mainland. Ascension Island is singularly barren. St. Helena is fertile in the interior, but presents to the sea a perpendicular wall of rock about 1000 feet high. For Madeira, the Canaries, and the Cape Verde Islands, see sects. 108, 109.

167.—1. What countries in Africa form part of the Turkish Empire? 2. What part of it belongs to a sovereign who resides in Asia? 3. What four European powers hold possessions in Africa? 4. Mention those which each has on the mainland. 5. Mention the islands belonging to each. 6. To what power belong respectively the Canaries, Cape Verde Islands, Comoros, and Seychelles. 7. Name the most important of the British possessions, and its principal exports.

168.—1. What smaller islands near Madagascar are mountainous like itself? 2. What other groups in the same neighbourhood are low? 3. Why would Fernando Po not serve its present sanitary purpose, if it were low? 4. Describe the configuration of St. Helena.

* Two independent States have sprung up in the interior, north of Cape Colony, viz., the Orange River Free State, towards the sources of the Orange River; and the Transvaal Republic, farther north towards the Tropic of Capricorn. In 1860, the maritime region of British Caffraria, lying between Cape Colony and Natal, and conterminous towards the interior with the Orange River Free State, was constituted a separate colony

AMERICA.

Area, 15,500,000 square miles, less than Asia, but fully four times the size of Europe.

Population, Seventy-one millions, fully one-fourth that of Europe.

169. **Bird's-eye View.**—The general configuration of America is on the Scandinavian model (sect. 66), *i.e.*, the principal mountains run north and south, and keep much nearer the western than the eastern shore. Accordingly, the largest rivers are all on the eastern slope. All the natural features of America are on a gigantic scale. The principal mountain-chain is divided by the low isthmus of Panama into two, the Rocky Mountains of North America, and the Andes of South America. These are severally the longest mountain-chains in the world, though higher summits are found elsewhere (sect. 17). The highest summit among the Rocky Mountains is Popocatapetl, an active volcano 18,000 feet high, and covered with perpetual snow; it is situated in the Mexican portion of the Rocky Mountains, called Cordilleras. The highest mountain among the Andes is Aconcagua in Chili, 23,910 feet high. The two principal rivers of America, the Mississippi and the Amazon, are also the longest in the world, each having a course of 4000 miles. No water-fall matches that of Niagara, between Lakes Erie and Ontario; its roar can be heard at a distance of fifteen miles, and the cloud formed by its spray can be seen at a distance of ninety miles. As for plains, the whole centre of America, from the Arctic Ocean to the mouth of the La Plata, is both level and low. In North America so low is the watershed between the head waters of the Mississippi and the great lakes in which the St. Lawrence originates, that a heavy rain frequently unites them by inundating the adjacent swamps; and in the extensive regions north of the St. Lawrence, the waters hesitate, as in Holland, which way to flow. In South America, the Amazon actually communicates, by the Rio Negro, with the Orinoco: by the Madeira, another of its tributaries, it almost touches the head waters of the Paraguay, which flows southwards to

---

169.—1. In what three respects does the configuration of America resemble that of Scandinavia? 2. Name the two chief mountain ranges, and the longest river connected with each. 3. Name the highest summit in the Andes and Rocky Mountains respectively. 4. Where are the latter called Cordilleras? 5. In what direction does the greatest extent of low and level land lie? 6. What rivers in

the Plata. The Canadian lakes, though much smaller than the Sea of Aral and the Caspian (sect. 34), are the largest fresh-water lakes in the world. Table-lands are not wanting in America, but they are inferior to those of Asia (sect. 32).

170. Races.—The aboriginal population consists of Esquimaux who occupy the northern regions of America, and Indians who are scattered over all the rest of the continent. The former are short and fat, with black eyes and hair; they live chiefly by fishing. The latter are tall and erect, with hazel eyes and black hair; they live chiefly by hunting. The Indians of Mexico and Peru form an exception to this mode of life; they were half-civilized before the conquest of America by Europeans. Though without any better domestic quadruped than the Llama, they had made progress in agriculture; and good roads connected large cities, which were adorned by imposing temples. The aboriginal tribes, however, constitute scarcely one-sixth of the actual population. The European settlers in North America have been principally British; those in South America, Spaniards and Portuguese: millions of negroes have been imported as slaves into both, and mixed races have arisen amounting to millions more. The English-speaking population, and the Spanish-speaking population, constitute severally about one-third of the whole. The Portuguese-speaking population constitutes little more than a tenth.

171. Countries of America with their Population and Chief Towns—

Countries	Population.	Chief Towns.
Greenland; or, Danish America, . .	10,000	
Russian America, .	10,000	
Hudson's Bay Company Territories, . .	100,000	
Canada, . . .	2,500,000	Quebec, Montreal, Kingston, Toronto.
Carry forward,	2,620,000	

South America are so connected as to convert a portion of the Continent into an island? 7. Where else (sect. 160) is there a like phenomenon? 8. Where are there inland waters more extensive than the Canadian Lakes?

170.—1. Name the two aboriginal races of America. 2. Describe that one which occupies the northern regions. 3. Contrast the Esquimaux with the Indians. 4. Where were the latter half civilized before the discovery of America by Columbus? 5. Mention some of the animals most useful to us which they did not possess. 6. What are the three European languages most extensively spoken in America? 7. Which of the African races has been established in America?

Countries.	Population.	Chief Towns.
Brought forward,	2,620,000	
New Brunswick, .	250,000	St. John's.
Nova Scotia and Cape Breton, . . .	330,000	Halifax.
Prince Edward's Island,	80,000	Charlotte-town.
Newfoundland, . .	120,000	St. John's.
British Columbia, .	75,000	New Westminster.
Vancouver's Island, .	25,000	Victoria.
United States, . .	31,500,000	Washington on the Potomac.
Mexico, . . .	8,000,000	Mexico.
Central America, .	2,355,000	Guatimala.
St. Domingo and Haiti,	760,000	San Domingo, Port-au-Prince.
Spanish West Indies,	2,000,000	Havana.
British „ „ .	1,000,000	Kingston.
French „ „ .	300,000	
Dutch „ „ .	40,000	
Danish „ „ .	35,000	
Swedish „ „ .	1,000	
Guiana, . . .	229,000	Georgetown, Paramaribo, Cayenne
New Granada, . .	2,250,000	Santa Fe di Bogota.
Venezuela, . .	1,560,000	Caraccas.
Ecuador, . . .	1,000,000	Quito.
Brazil, . . .	7,500,000	Rio Janeiro, Bahia, Pernambuco.
Peru, . . .	2,500,000	Lima.
Bolivia, . . .	2,000,000	Chuquisaca.
Chili, . . .	1,500,000	Santiago.
Argentine Republic, .	1,170,000	Parana, Buenos Ayres.
Uruguay, . . .	215,000	Monte Video.
Paraguay, . . .	800,000	Assumption.
Patagonia, . .	400,000	
	70,615,000	

172. NATURAL FEATURES—

Western Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.	*Interior. Mountains and Lakes.*	*Eastern Coast. Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Mackenzie River.	Great Bear Lake.	Barrow's Straits.
Point Barrow.	Great Slave Lake.	Baffin's Bay.
Icy Cape.	Athabasca Lake.	Davis' Straits.
Cape Prince of Wales.		Cape Farewell.
Behring's Strait.		Hudson's Straits.
Bristol Bay.	Mt. St. Elias.	Hudson's Bay.
Sitka Island.	Mt. Brown.	James' Bay.
Queen Charlotte's Island.	Rocky Mountains.	River Saskatchewan.
		Straits of Belleisle.

171.—(See sect. 37.) 1. What country of America has by far the largest population? 2. Name the six European nations among which the West Indian Islands are divided. 3. What rank does Britain hold among them as a West Indian proprietor? 4. What country in South America has the largest population?

Western Coast. *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*	*Interior.* *Mountains and Lakes.*	*Eastern Coast.* *Capes, Islands, Bays, and Rivers.*
Vancouver's Island.	Lake Winnipeg.	Anticosti Island.
Fraser River.	Mt. Hooker.	Gulf of St. Lawrence.
River Columbia.	Canadian Lakes.	River St. Lawrence.
	Superior.	Newfoundland Island.
	Michigan.	Cape Race.
	Huron.	Prince Edward Island.
	Erie.	Cape Breton Island.
	Ontario.	Cape Sable.
	Pacific Alps.	Bay of Fundy.
River Buenaventura.	Lake Utah.	Cape Cod.
	Freemont's Peak.	Hudson River.
	Alleghany Mountains.	Chesapeake Bay.
Cape St. Lucas.		Cape Hatteras.
Gulf of California.		Bermudas Islands.
River Colorado.	Cordilleras Mountains.	Cape Sable.
		River Mississippi.
		„ Colorado.
		„ Norte.
		West Indian Islands.
Gulf of Tehuantepec.	Mt. Popocatapetl.	Bay of Campeachy.
		Cape Catoche.
		Yucatan Bay.
		Bay of Honduras.
	Lake Nicaragua.	Cape Gracias a Dios.
Gulf of Panama.		Gulf of Darien.
		River Magdalena.
		Gulf of Maracaibo.
	Parime Mountains.	River Orinoco.
Gulf of Guayaquil.	Mt. Pichincha.	„ Amazon.
	Mt. Cotopaxi.	Joannes Island.
	Mt. Chimborazo.	Cape St. Roque.
Juan Fernandez Is.	Brazilian Mountains.	San Francisco River.
	Lake Titicaca.	Cape Frio.
Masafuera Island.	Andes Mountains.	River Plata.
	Mt. Aconcagua.	Cape Corrientes.
		False Bay.
River Biobio.		River Colorado.
Chiloe Island.		Gulf of Antonio.
Wellington Island.		Gulf of St. George.
Straits of Magellan.		Cape Blanco.
Terra del Fuego Island.		Falkland Islands.
Cape Horn.		Island of Georgia.

172.—(See sect. 46.) 1. Name the straits separating the Old and New Worlds where these come nearest each other. 2. What straits separate Greenland and Terra del Fuego respectively from the American continent? 3. What island groups lie scattered between Asia and America? 4. Name the largest two of the West

GREENLAND; OR, DANISH AMERICA.

Population, Ten Thousand.

173. Greenland is believed to be a cluster of islands joined together by ice. Only a few stations on the west coast are occupied by the Danes. The interior is not inhabited at all. The extremes of temperature are great at opposite seasons; of cold, because in winter the sun never remains long above the horizon, and for a while does not rise at all; and of heat, because in summer the sun never remains long below the horizon, and for a while does not set at all (sect. 22). The heat of the short Greenland summer is such as to bring out swarms of mosquitoes. The native Esquimaux have been converted to Christianity by Moravian missionaries; they live chiefly by fishing and seal-hunting.

RUSSIAN AMERICA.

Population, Ten thousand.

174. The north-west corner of America is held by the Russians, merely for the sake of the fur-trade. The coast-line of Russian America is very extensive compared with its area. The chief station, called *New Archangel*, is on an island, near to Sitka Island, the wettest place on the globe.

Indian Islands. 5. Between what gulf and bay is the peninsula of Labrador situated? 6. What two peninsulas almost enclose the Gulf of Mexico? 7. What large island divides its mouth into two? 8. What two peninsulas of North America are in very nearly the same latitude? 9. What bay divides New Brunswick from Nova Scotia? 10. What straits separate Newfoundland from Labrador? 11. Name the most southerly point of Nova Scotia, and the most easterly of Newfoundland. 12. In what two capes does the coast of Labrador terminate? 13. Distinguish the two Capes Sable. 14. Name the bays on either side of Yucatan.

173.—1. How is the great heat of the Greenland summer accounted for? 2. Of what race and religion are the inhabitants? 3. Where and how do they live?

174.—1. Mention something notable about the shape of Russian America. 2. What is said about Sitka Island and New Archangel?

BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

Population, nearly 3½ millions.

175. **Bird's-eye View.**—The area of British North America is almost equal to that of the United States, or of all Europe; but great part of it is uninhabitable, and the whole actual population does not much exceed that of Scotland, or of the city of London. More than two-thirds of that population are in Canada alone. The other divisions are New Brunswick; Nova Scotia, and Cape Breton; Prince Edward's Island; Newfoundland; British Columbia; and the Hudson's Bay Company territories. These last are a marshy flat, broken only by the Rocky Mountains, and dotted over with trading posts, where skins and furs are taken in exchange for spirits, fire-arms, and trinkets. British Columbia, which lies wholly west of the Rocky Mountains, was detached from the Hudson Bay Company territories in 1858. Gold was discovered on the banks of Fraser River in 1856, and so great an immigration was the consequence, that a separate local government became necessary. Vancouver's Island, on the coast of British Columbia, contains coal, and enjoys a climate very similar to that of the British Isles. The cod fishery off the coasts of Newfoundland is the largest in the world. The Gulf Stream (sect. 27) is the cause both of the abundance of fish on the Newfoundland banks, and of the fogs which rise from them. These fogs extend also to Nova Scotia and Cape Breton, but not to Prince Edward's Island, which is completely sheltered from the Gulf Stream. Of all the maritime stations, *Halifax*, in Nova Scotia, is the most important. It is the principal naval station of Great Britain on the other side of the Atlantic, and the nearest harbour on the American mainland to the British Isles. The distance from Halifax to Galway, Ireland, is 1800 miles; a voyage of only six days.

175.—1. Show how disproportionate the population of British North America is to its extent. 2. Name the most populous and the most recently constituted of the British possessions. 3. Describe the Hudson's Bay Company territories. 4. Which two of the British possessions does the Gulf Stream render foggy? 5. What makes Halifax an important station? 6. Of what is it the capital? 7. Of what two provinces are the capitals called, similarly, St. John's (sect. 171)? 8. Name the capitals of Prince Edward's Island and British Columbia (sect. 171). 9. What is said of Vancouver's Island?

176. **The Canadas.**—Upper Canada occupies the northern shore of the great lakes, and comprises the most fertile district in British America, viz., that lying between Lakes Huron and Erie. Lower Canada occupies both banks of the River St. Lawrence, the boundary with the United States being determined by the summit-level of the watershed between its tributaries and the rivers of New England (sect. 179). The Canadian lakes and the River St. Lawrence are remarkable for the smallness of the area which they drain. The source of Connecticut river is not far from the southern bank of the St. Lawrence; and it has been already stated (sect. 169) that the head waters of the Mississippi sometimes actually communicate with the Canadian lakes. The tributaries, on the northern bank of the St. Lawrence, are also comparatively small. The St. Lawrence and the Canadian lakes form, during half the year, a great highway of commerce. Ship-canals have been solidly constructed wherever there are falls or rapids, so that not only the interior of Canada, but also the western states of the Union, can be reached from the ocean without breaking bulk. This uninterrupted water-way is of especial importance to the export trade, because the raw produce of the country, grain and timber, would not bear the cost of land-carriage. From the beginning of December to the middle of April, ice interrupts the navigation of the St. Lawrence; it is frozen solid above Quebec, except at the Falls of Niagara and the rapids, and below Quebec, it is encumbered with floating ice. Lower Canada was originally a French colony; accordingly, the majority of its inhabitants still speak French, and profess the Roman Catholic religion. Upper Canada is occupied chiefly by settlers from the British Islands, and is the more prosperous of the two. The principal towns are *Montreal* and *Quebec* in Lower Canada, *Toronto, Hamilton*, and *Kingston* in Upper Canada. The two Canadas, which together are more than four times larger than Great Britain, have now a common government; and the city of *Ottawa*, in a central position with regard to both, has been selected as the future capital.

176.—1. Name the five great Canadian lakes from east to west. 2. Which of them is improperly called Canadian, being enclosed within the territory of the United States? 3. Between which of them are the Falls of Niagara, Lake St. Clair, and St. Mary's Leap respectively? 4. How do boats pass the Falls? 5. What makes an uninterrupted water-way of especial importance to Canada? 6. How many months in the year does the climate allow this water-way to be used? 7. At

UNITED STATES.[*]

Area, 3,305,000 square miles, nearly equal to that of Europe.
Population, 31½ millions, equal to that of the British Isles and Denmark together.

177. **Bird's-eye View.**—The United States occupy the whole breadth of North America, from the British possessions on the north, to Mexico on the south; and their area is nearly equal to that of Europe. This immense breadth is divided by the Rocky Mountains, the Alleghanies, and the Pacific Alps into four distinct regions, two inland and two maritime. The most important are those lying on opposite sides of the Alleghany Mountains, viz., the Atlantic slope, which is the most populous, and the great basin of the Mississippi, which is by far the largest of the four regions above mentioned. The Atlantic slope comprises all the older States, and its population amounts to more than half that of the whole Union. The basin of the Mississippi contains the largest tract of exuberantly rich land in the world. This fertile tract lies wholly east of the 96th meridian, west of which semi-desert table-lands rise in succession towards the Rocky Mountains. The lesser inland region, situated between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific Alps, is an elevated desert; the central part of it is rainless, and completely cut off from communication with the ocean (sects. 126, 160). What streams it has flow into salt marshes or lakes, the largest of which is Utah, measuring 75 miles by 30 miles. The maritime region along the Pacific is insignificant, as the mountains rise almost immediately from the shore.

178. **Productions.**—East of the Rocky Mountains the heat

---

what town on the St. Lawrence does the solid ice cease? 8. What difference is there between the inhabitants of Upper and Lower Canada, in respect of race, language, and religion? 9. Name the two chief towns in Lower Canada. 10. Name the three principal towns in Upper Canada. 11. What town has been selected as the capital of the United Provinces?

177.—1. Name the three mountain ranges which divide the breadth of the United States into four distinct regions? 2. Which two of these four regions are the most important? 3. How comes it that the Atlantic slope is the most populous part of the Union? 4. Describe the basin of the Mississippi on opposite sides of the 96th meridian. 5. What are the natural boundaries of the two inland regions? 6. Describe the lesser of these inland regions. 7. In what respect does it resemble Central Asia?

[*] See Postscript at beginning of volume (p. viii.)

of summer and the cold of winter are both excessive. So great is the heat of summer that maize ripens even in the Northern States; and so great is the cold of winter that the cotton crops of the Southern States are often seriously injured. Even at New Orleans, in the latitude of Sahara, frost is not unknown. There is, however, a great difference between north and south. A line running along the rivers Potomac, Ohio, Mississippi, and Missouri, separates very nearly the regions where heat and cold respectively predominate. North of that line, the productions are, on the whole, those of the temperate zone; and the population is free, except in Maryland and Delaware. South of that line, the productions become more and more of a tropical character, and slavery exists. Cotton, tobacco, sugar, and rice are the staples of the Southern States. The surplus produce of the United States is agricultural, that of the United Kingdom manufacturing; and so great is the surplus in both, that the trade between them is greater than the trade between either and any other country. West of the Rocky Mountains the extremes of temperature are comparatively moderate.

179. PRINCIPAL STATES—

The Union consists of Thirty-four States and Eight Territories. Territories, on reaching a certain population, receive the constitution of States. The States are divided into Eastern, Middle, Southern, and Western. The principal are—

Of the Six Eastern States,

called also collectively, NEW ENGLAND.

MAINE, the best grazing and chief ship-building State.
RHODE ISLAND, the smallest, but most highly manufacturing
MASSACHUSETTS, the most forward State in respect of education.

Of the Four Middle States.

NEW YORK, pre-eminent for population and trade, called therefore the *Empire State*.
PENNSYLVANIA, producing more than half the iron manufactured in the Union.

178.—1. Wherein does the climate differ on opposite sides of the Rocky Mountains? 2. Along what rivers is the line dividing north and south to be traced? 3. Name the only two states north of that line, in which slavery exists. 4. What are the staple productions of the southern states? 5. On what is the great trade between Britain and the United States founded?

Of the Ten Southern States.

VIRGINIA, surpassing all others in the culture of tobacco.
NORTH CAROLINA, pre-eminent in the manufacture of pitch, tar, and turpentine.
SOUTH CAROLINA and GEORGIA, the principal rice States.
ALABAMA and MISSISSIPPI, the principal cotton States.
LOUISIANA and FLORIDA, the principal sugar States.

Of the Fourteen Western States.

ILLINOIS, called by way of eminence, the *Prairie State.*
CALIFORNIA, famous for its gold diggings.

180. LARGEST TOWNS.—The Union contains the following towns with a population exceeding 100,000. They are—

Towns.	*Situation.*	*State.*
Boston, ...	On Massachusetts Bay,	Massachusetts.
New York and Brooklyn, . .	On Hudson River, . .	New York.
Philadelphia, . .	On Delaware River, .	Pennsylvania.
Baltimore, . . .	On Patapsco River, . .	Maryland.
New Orleans, . .	On the Mississippi, . .	Louisiana.
Cincinnati, . . .	On the Ohio, ...	Ohio.
St. Louis, . . .	On the Missouri, . . .	St. Louis.
Chicago, ...	On Lake Michigan, . .	Illinois.

These towns may be classified as follows—

1. According to population.	
New York, with Brooklyn, . .	1,073,000
Philadelphia, . .	563,000
Baltimore, . . .	212,000
Boston, ...	178,000
New Orleans, . .	169,000
Cincinnati, . . .	161,000
St. Louis, . . .	161,000
Chicago, ...	109,000

2. According to commercial importance.	
New York,	Foreign Trade.
Boston,	
New Orleans,	
Philadelphia,	
Baltimore,	
Cincinnati,	Inland Traffic.
St. Louis,	
Chicago,	

The United States contain only seven other towns with a population exceeding 50,000.

179.—1. What states are called respectively the *Prairie* State and the *Empire* State? 2. What state builds most ships? 3. What state produces most iron? 4. What are the staple productions of the two Carolinas respectively? 5. Which is the best educated state? 6. Which is the most commercial? 7. Name the two cotton states. 8. Name the two rice states. 9. Name the two sugar states. 10. In which of the Atlantic states are Capes Cod and Hatteras respectively? 11. What state is divided into two by one of the Canadian lakes? 12. What state has two shores, one on certain Canadian lakes, and another on the Atlantic? 13. What is the southernmost point in the United States? 14. Which state lies farthest north?

180.—1. Which is the largest town in the Union? 2. Name the four chief

181. **Social Condition.**—The British races, the English language, and the Protestant religion prevail in the United States. The Dutch element, which used to be strong in New York, is scarcely now distinguishable. Germans are numerous in Pennsylvania, Virginia, and Texas. With Louisiana a population of French origin was admitted into the Union, and a considerable number of Spaniards with Florida, Texas, New Mexico, and California. All these races, however, easily amalgamate, and the grand distinction, which cannot be obliterated, is that between the white man and the black. Besides fully three million slaves, there is nearly half a million of free blacks. The native Indians still amount to about half a million. A territory lying north of Texas has been reserved for them; but their numbers are rapidly diminishing.

182. **Government.**—The government of the whole Union is conducted by a President, who holds office for four years; a Senate, the members of which are elected by the several State Legislatures, each Legislature electing two; and a House of Representatives, the members of which are elected directly by the people according to population. So preponderant, in respect of population, are the states of New York and Pennsylvania, that they send one-fourth of the whole number of representatives. The Senate and House of Representatives are together called *Congress.* The seat of federal government is *Washington*, a city of 60,000 inhabitants, situated on the Maryland side of the Potomac, in a district ten miles square, called Columbia, which was ceded to Congress by Maryland and Virginia. Slavery, which used to receive a federal sanction by being allowed in this federal district (sect. 15), no longer exists in it.

---

seats of foreign trade. 3. Which one of these is in the south? 4. Name the two chief seats of inland traffic. 5. Which of them is in the south? 6. Name the three large towns, which are on the Mississippi, or on tributaries of the Mississippi. 7. Name the four on the Atlantic slope. 8. Which of them are on the Hudson, Delaware, and Patapsco rivers respectively?

181.—1. In what three particulars do the inhabitants of the United States resemble those of the British Isles? 2. In what three states are Germans most numerous? 3. What state was originally French? 4. What four states were originally Spanish? 5. How many negroes are there altogether? 6. How many of them are free?

182.—1. In the constitution of the United States, what answers to our King or Queen, Lords, and Commons? 2. How many years does the President remain in office? 3. How are the senators elected? 4. How are the representatives elected?

MEXICO.

Area, 834,000 square miles, seven times that of the British Isles.

Population, fully 8 millions, 2 millions more than that of Ireland.

183. Mexico, from being a confederation of states, has, through the armed intervention of the French, become an Empire. The greater part of its interior is a table-land, from 6000 to 8000 feet high; on which account the rivers are not navigable to any great distance inland. The climate of the table-land is temperate; but that of the coasts is tropical, and in many parts unhealthy. The chief seaport, *Vera Cruz*, on the Gulf of Mexico, is frequently visited by yellow fever. The largest towns are in the interior. The chief of them is the capital, *Mexico*, situated 7000 feet above the ocean-level, about 200 miles from Vera Cruz on one side, and from *Acapulco*, another seaport, on the other. The population of Mexico is the most piebald in the world. The majority are still Indians. The whites (Spaniards chiefly) number about a million, and the Negroes, all of whom are free, about 6000; the rest are crosses of these. The children of Whites and Indians are called *Mestizoes;* those of Whites and Negroes, *Mulattoes;* those of Indians and Negroes, *Zamboes*. The Roman Catholic religion is established, and no other is tolerated. Spanish is the universal language. Education is at a low ebb. Should the Empire now established in Mexico endure, its material prosperity may be expected to improve.

Mexico, . .	205,000	Guadalaxara, . .	90,000	Puebla, . .	85,000

---

5. What two states are most powerful in the House of Representatives? 6. Why is Washington, a comparatively small town, called the capital of the United States?

183.—1. How has Mexico been revolutionized into an Empire? 2. In what two respects do the Mexicans resemble the Spaniards? 3. What is there in the structure of the country to prevent the Mexican rivers from being navigable far? 4. Name a seaport on either shore. 5. Name the two largest inland towns. 6. What three races are commingled in the population? 7. Of the commixed races which is the most numerous, and which the least so? 8. What are mestizoes, mulattoes, and zamboes, respectively?

CENTRAL AMERICA.

Population, Two and a half millions, smaller than that of Scotland.

184. Physically, Central America extends from the narrowest part of Mexico to the southern extremity of the Isthmus of Panama. Thus reckoned, it includes Yucatan, and some other territory of the Mexican Confederation, towards the north, and part of New Granada, towards the south. Besides these, Central America contains Belize, a British station for cutting mahogany and logwood; the Mosquito coast, a district governed by a native chief under the protection of Great Britain; and five independent republics, Guatimala, Honduras, San Salvador, Nicaragua, and Costa Rica. In all Central America, there is only one town of more than 50,000 inhabitants, viz., *New Guatimala*, which enjoys a delightful climate, being situated 5000 feet above the ocean-level. The configuration, climate, and productions of Central America are similar to those of Mexico. The population is also similar to the Mexican in origin and mixture, in language, in religion, and in education, or rather in the want of education. Earthquakes frequently destroy the towns of Central America; and political commotions are evermore checking its material progress.

SOUTH AMERICA.

Population, fully Twenty-one millions, 1 million more than that of England and Wales.

185. The Andes divide South America into two, a very narrow maritime region washed by the Pacific, and a great mass on their eastern side. This mass again consists of three basins, drained respectively by the Orinoco, the Amazon, and the Plata, all which rivers, though actually or nearly communicating with one another by some of their head-waters (sect. 169), are separated, in the lower part of their course, by mountain groups. These groups are the Parime mountains, enclosed by the Orinoco

---

184.—1. Mention the natural limits of Central America. 2. For what purpose do the British hold Belize? 3. Name the five independent republics. 4. Name the largest town. 5. In what four particulars do the inhabitants resemble the Mexicans? 6. What resemblance is there between the physical and political condition of the country?

and Rio Negro; and the Brazilian mountains; opposite both, the Andes project eastward as if to meet them. The most remarkable portion of the Andes is on the borders of Bolivia and Peru, where two ridges enclose Lake Titicaca, the only lake in South America worth mentioning. It is larger than any European lake, except Ladoga. South of the lake is Mount Illimani, upwards of 21,000 feet high; and east of it Mount Sorata, somewhat higher. Of the three great basins mentioned above, the Amazonian is by far the largest, and is distinguished by its forests; grassy plains are characteristic of the other two. Except in Patagonia, where a blustering winter prevails throughout the greater part of the year, the climate of South America has the same peculiarity as that of Mexico, viz., that spring, summer, and winter are seated on separate thrones which they never quit. The heat is always scorching in the plains, owing to their great depression; the cold is always polar among the highest ridges of the Andes; and the temperature is always mild on the intermediate plateaux. Hence the inhabitants of Quito, though living under the equator, enjoy just such a climate as their ancestors were accustomed to in Spain. The most notable circumstance in the political condition of South America is, that, whereas the Portuguese possessions have been kept entire in the empire of Brazil, and enjoy a stable government, those of Spain have fallen asunder into numerous republics, which, like those of Central America, are in a state of chronic revolution. Throughout South America, the Roman Catholic is the established religion.

185.—1. Name the three principal river-basins in South America. 2. Between which two of them do the Parime mountains intervene? 3. What is the most remarkable portion of the Andes? 4. Name two mountains near Lake Titicaca. 5. In what way does the climate of South America resemble that of Mexico? 6. What two nations of Europe conquered almost all South America? 7. In what respect do the regions once Spanish agree, and in what respect do they differ from those once Portuguese? 8. What countries in North America resemble, both religiously and politically, the countries in South America, which were formerly Spanish possessions? 9. What country has the smallest line of coast? 10. What country has none at all? 11. What country has a shore on both the Pacific and the Atlantic? 12. What country lies wholly west of the Andes? 13. What two countries are traversed by the equator? 14. What four countries are traversed by the Tropic of Capricorn? 15. What great river bounds Ecuador for a considerable distance on the south? 16. Name the chief river in New Granada, and also in Venezuela.

REPUBLIC OF NEW GRANADA.

Area, 380,000 square miles, more than three times that of the British Isles.

Population, Two and a quarter millions, smaller than that of Scotland.

186. The eastern part of New Granada belongs to the plain of the Orinoco; the western is occupied by three ridges, into which the Andes are divided soon after entering New Granada. Two of these enclose the River Magdalena, which has a course of nearly 1000 miles. The capital, *Santa Fe di Bogota* (pop. 45,000), is at such an elevation as to enjoy a temperate climate. Chief port, *Cartagena*, on the Carribean Sea. The Isthmus of Panama, which belongs physically to Central America (sect. 184), is commercially by far the most part of New Granada. A railway, between fifty and sixty miles long, has been constructed across it; and several proposals have been made for cutting through it a ship-canal. In one part, the highest ground between seas is only 260 feet above the ocean-level.

REPUBLIC OF ECUADOR.

Area, 315,000 square miles, nearly three times that of the British Isles.

Population, One million, one-third that of Scotland.

187. Ecuador is traversed by the Andes in two parallel ridges, which enclose the best-peopled district. This is a plain about twenty miles broad, and nearly 10,000 feet above the ocean-level. In it stands the capital, *Quito* (pop. 60,000), enjoying a delightful climate, but exposed to frequent thunderstorms and earthquakes. Two of the most remarkable mountains among the Andes are in Ecuador; these are the dome-shaped Chimborazo, which presents so imposing an appearance

---

186.—1. Describe the Andes in New Granada. 2. Mention a fact which shows that they are completely interrupted at the Isthmus of Panama. 3. On which side of that isthmus is the Gulf of Panama? 4. Name the gulf on the other side. 5. How broad nearly is the isthmus? 6. Name the capital and chief port of New Granada.

to the navigators of the Pacific; and Cotopaxi (nearly 19,000 feet), the loftiest of all the volcanoes in the Andes. Ecuador has but one port, *Guayaquil*, about half the size of the capital.

REPUBLIC OF VENEZUELA.

Area, 450,000 square miles, nearly four times that of the British Isles.

Population, One and a half millions, one half that of Scotland.

188. The main feature is the *llanos* or plains of the Orinoco, which are so level, that the annual overflowing of the river converts them into a lake 600 miles in length, east and west, by nearly 100 miles in breadth. Almost the whole year is occupied by the rising and falling of the Orinoco. During five months, from April to August inclusive, it rises; throughout September it remains at the highest, flooding the country on either side to the extent above-mentioned: during other five months, from October to February inclusive, it falls; and throughout March it remains at the lowest. This great annual overflow renders the Orinoco a muddy river, and prevents the establishment of towns upon its banks. Another disadvantage is the unhealthy sultriness of the river-banks, in consequence of their low level; in many parts the air is one dense cloud of poisonous insects to a height of twenty feet above the river. *Caraccas*, the capital, has about 30,000 inhabitants: its port is *La Guayra*.

GUIANA.

Area, 150,000 square miles, considerably more than that of the British Isles.

Population, Two hundred and twenty-nine thousand.

189. The maritime region is low and level, but exceedingly fertile, and, in the neighbourhood of towns, well cultivated; sugar, coffee, and cotton are the staple productions. The

---

187.—1. Describe the plateau and climate of Quito. 2. For what are Chimborazo and Cotopaxi severally remarkable? 3. Why is Ecuador so called? 4. Name the capital and chief port of Ecuador.

188.—1. In what month is the Orinoco at the highest? 2. In what month at

interior consists of mountains, with intervening swamps. Dense forests abound. The whole country is divided into British, Dutch, and French Guiana, which are related to one another, in respect of size, nearly as the numbers 3, 2, 1. The population of these divisions, and the size of their chief towns, bear a general proportion to their areas, as may be seen from the following figures:—

British Guiana, .	Pop. 150,000	Chief town,	Georgetown,	Pop. 25,000
Dutch Guiana, .	54,000	,,	Paramaribo,	17,000
French Guiana, .	25,000	,,	Cayenne, .	5,000

All these towns are difficult of access on account of sandbanks along the coast, and bars at the river mouths. British Guiana is divided into three districts, called Berbice, Demerara, and Essequibo, after the three principal rivers. The river Essequibo is by far the largest, not only in British, but in all Guiana. *Georgetown* is situated on the Demerara, about a mile from its mouth.

EMPIRE OF BRAZIL.

Area, 3,180,000 square miles, twenty-six times that of the British Isles.

Population, 7½ millions, fully one-fourth that of the British Isles.

190. The area of Brazil is nearly the same as that of the United States; and is so distributed, that its inland boundary touches on all the political divisions of South America except three, viz., Peru, Chili, and Patagonia. The most prominent natural feature is the Amazon. So large is this river that, at a distance of 300 miles from the sea, its banks can scarcely be seen from a ship in the middle of the stream; and, at a distance

---

the lowest? 3. What is the extent of the annual inundation? 4. Why are there no towns on the Orinoco? 5. Name the capital and the chief port of Venezuela.

189.—1. Contrast the maritime with the inland regions of Guiana. 2. In what proportions is Guiana divided among the British, French, and Dutch? 3. Name the chief town in each division. 4. Name the three principal rivers in British Guiana. 5. On which of them is the capital situated? 6. Which of them is the largest in all Guiana?

of 1500 miles from the sea, it is still forty fathoms deep. The Madeira, its principal tributary, is as large as the Danube The interior consists of an immense plain extending on both sides of the Amazon, and of a mountainous district rising both from the Amazonian plain and from the Atlantic towards a central ridge, which separates the tributaries of the Amazon from those of La Plata. One dense forest covers both these districts, except in certain maritime districts, where the surface has been cleared. The high lands yield the grains and fruits of Europe, and the low lands tropical produce, as coffee, sugar, and cotton. Mining competes with agriculture; the mines towards the source of the San Francisco are particularly rich in both gold and diamonds. Brazil is a hereditary constitutional monarchy (sect. 15)—or empire, since the sovereign is called emperor—with a senate and house of representatives. The emperor is a scion of the royal house of Portugal, to which country Brazil originally belonged. Half the population are negro-slaves: of the other half, the great majority are either mulattoes or free negroes; and the number of whites in the whole empire does not much exceed a million. These are, with few exceptions, of Portuguese extraction. Accordingly, the Portuguese language is that of the whole population; the Roman Catholic Church is recognised in the constitution as that of the state; and popular education is as little advanced as in the mother country. There is not a single town of 10,000 inhabitants in the interior. The more considerable towns, like the cultivated districts, are situated on the coast: they are all seats of trade. Next to *Rio Janeiro*, the capital, pop. 300,000, ranks *Bahia*, pop. 100,000. Three other towns, *Pernambuco*, south of Cape St. Roque, *Maranham*, and *Para*, north of it, have a population exceeding 20,000, but under 50,000.

190.—1. Name the only three countries in South America which Brazil does not touch. 2. Name the three republics north of Brazil. 3. Mention some facts which show the enormous size of the Amazon. 4. Where alone are cultivated districts and large towns to be found? 5. Of what two natural divisions does the interior consist? 6. In what do these two divisions agree? 7. Describe their respective produce. 8. Where are the richest mines? 9. What is the language, the religion, and the government of Brazil? 10. Of what three races does the population consist? 11. How many of the negroes are slaves? 12. Name the capital and the only other city that can rank with it. 13. Name the three towns of the second class. 14. What supports all these towns?

REPUBLIC OF PERU.

Area, 500,000 square miles, more than four times that of the British Isles.

Population, 2½ millions, smaller than that of Scotland.

191. The extensive coast of Peru is remarkably cool, owing to fogs, which obscure the sun, and to a cold sea-current (sect. 27) from the Antarctic regions. The natural dryness, and the almost total absence of rain west of the Andes, render the coast a succession of sandy deserts. So little is agriculture attended to, and so limited are the means of inland transit, that the towns along the coast import great part of their provisions from Chili. A great number of the inhabitants are employed in the gold and silver mines of the eastern Andes. The chief exports, besides the precious metals, are wine and brandy, sugar, Jesuits'-bark, salt, saltpetre, guano, and alpaca wool. The best guano is obtained from the Chincha Islands, three in number, situated fifteen miles from the shore, south of Lima. The deposit is said to be eighty feet thick in some places. Almost all the population is along the coast and on the table-lands. The mountains are still in possession of the Indians, who maintain a constant warfare with the Spanish settlers east of the Andes. Between the Ucayali and the Brazilian frontier stretches a level forest country, very warm and unhealthy. *Lima* (pop. 100,000) is the emporium, as well as the capital, of Peru; *Callao*, the port of Lima, has the safest and most commodious harbour on the whole coast of the Pacific. *Cuzco*, the ancient capital of the Incas, is an elegant city, nearly half the size of Lima. *Pasco*, the highest city in the world, being 13,720 feet above the sea-level.

REPUBLIC OF BOLIVIA.

Area, 480,000 square miles, four times that of the British Isles.
Population, 2 millions, two-thirds that of Scotland.

192. The very limited coast of Bolivia is a desert. On all its inland frontiers, except the western, are plains, some of them grassy, and others covered with forests. The central

---

191.—1. Mention two causes of the coolness along the Peruvian coast. 2. In what two districts is almost all the population to be found? 3. To what river is almost all the drainage of Peru carried? 4. Describe the country between the Ucayali and the Brazilian frontiers. 5. Name the capital and the chief harbour. 6. Enumerate the principal exports.

region consists of mountain-ridges and table-lands. The majority of the population are of Indian descent. The capital is called *Chuquisaca* or *La Plata;* but the most famous town is *Potosi*. It is now no larger than the capital, but had once as many as 150,000 inhabitants, who were brought together by the extraordinary productiveness of the neighbouring silver mines. It is the second highest city in the world, being situated 13,330 feet above the ocean-level. The only seaport is *Cobija*, a small place on the desert coast; alpaca wool and the precious metals are the principal exports.

La Paz, . .	76,000	Chuquisaca, . .	24,000	Potosi, . .	23,000

REPUBLIC OF CHILI.

Area, 180,000 sq. m., considerably more than that of the British Isles.
Population, 1⅔ millions, one-half that of Scotland.

193. The narrow maritime belt, which constitutes Chili, is divided naturally into three, namely, a desert region at the northern extremity, a wooded one at the southern, and in the middle, between these, a rich grain district. The Chilian Andes are a single ridge with numerous offsets, among which are no fewer than fourteen active volcanoes, and Aconcagua (23,910 feet), the highest mountain on the American continent. The capital is *Santiago* (pop. 60,000), and the chief port *Valparaiso*. At a considerable distance from land is the island of Juan Fernandez, which was the solitary residence of Alexander Selkirk, the original of Defoe's *Robinson Crusoe*.

LA PLATA; OR, ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.

Area, 950,000 square miles, about eight times that of the British Isles.
Population, 1¼ million, less than one-half that of Scotland.

194. The territory of this republic is a dead level. Shallow lakes abound, covering immense tracts after rain; and not a

---

192.—1. Mention at least three sorts of country that would be passed by a person travelling from the coast through the heart of Bolivia to the Brazilian frontier. 2. Name the five countries conterminous with Bolivia. 3. Name the capital and the only seaport. 4. What are the principal exports? 5. On what two accounts is Potosi remarkable.

193.—1. Describe the threefold natural division of Chili. 2. In what two respects are the Chilian Andes remarkable? 3. Name the capital and the chief port. 4. For what is the island of Juan Fernandez remarkable?

few streams are lost in these lakes, or evaporated before reaching any principal river. In the south, almost all the lakes are salt. The most characteristic feature is the *pampas*, immense woodless plains west of the Parana, stretching in all directions for hundreds of miles, and in some for nearly a thousand. *Parana* is the seat of government; but by far the largest town, as also the chief port, is *Buenos Ayres*, pop. 122,000. Its exports are chiefly hides, bones, and tallow.

REPUBLIC OF PARAGUAY.

Area, 75,000 square miles, 2½ times that of Scotland.
Population, 800,000, one-fourth that of Scotland.

195. Paraguay has the same physical characteristics as the adjacent portion of La Plata. Countless herds of oxen are pastured on its plains, and constitute its chief wealth. A peculiar product is the herb called *matté*, which yields the Paraguay tea, so largely consumed in La Plata, Peru, and Chili. The plant grows a foot and a half high, has slender branches, and leaves resembling those of senna, but from four inches to five inches long. The branches are used as well as the leaves, and in much the same way as we use the tea of China, only that the infusion is drunk by means of a tube inserted into the teapot. Indians form the great majority of the population. *Assumption*, at the confluence of the Pilcomayo with the Paraguay, is the capital, pop. 48,000.

REPUBLIC OF URUGUAY.

Area, 120,000 square miles, equal to that of the British Isles.
Population, 215,000, one-fifteenth that of Scotland.

196. This country consists of undulating plains, on which immense herds of oxen are pastured. Frequent revolutions have

---

194.—1. Where and what are the *pampas*? 2. What is the prevailing character of the lakes and rivers? 3. Name the seat of government, and the chief port. 4. Which is the more populous? 5. What are the principal exports?

195.—1. Between what two rivers is Paraguay situated? 2. Which of them forms, for the greatest distance, a boundary between that republic and Brazil? 3. Describe the plant *matté*. 4. How is it used? 5. What is the name and situation of the capital?

greatly retarded its prosperity of late years. The capital, *Monte Video* (pop. 45,000), is the best harbour on the Plata: its principal exports are the same as those of Buenos Ayres.

PATAGONIA.

Population, 400,000, one-eighth that of Scotland.

197. The eastern and western shores of Patagonia present the same contrast as do those of the British Isles (sect. 42). The interior consists of plains covered with tufts of brown grass, low bushes, and salt lakes. The inhabitants are gigantic savages. They are cannibals in war; and in winter, when pressed by hunger, they kill and eat their old women before touching their dogs. Currents and tempests render the navigation of the Straits of Magellan so dangerous that Cape Horn is doubled in preference to passing through them. All the islands are mountainous; Cape Horn, situated on one of them, is high and woody.

ISLANDS OF AMERICA.

198. Bird's-eye View of the West India Islands.—The West India Islands may be divided into three groups, viz., the Greater Antilles, comprising Cuba, San Domingo, Puerto Rico, and Jamaica; the Lesser Antilles, comprising the Virgin Islands, the Leeward Islands, and the Windward Islands; lastly, the Bahamas. All of them have a warm moist climate, and are very unhealthy in the lower grounds. The seasons are strictly two—the wet season, from November to April; and the dry, from May to October. The Bahamas are low, rocky, and barren; the Antilles, both Greater and Lesser, are mountainous but fertile; their coasts are, for the most part, high and rugged, with deep water close at hand. The principal productions of

---

196.—1. Describe the surface. 2. What constitutes the chief wealth of the country? 3. Name the capital. 4. What does it export?

197.—1. What river separates Patagonia from La Plata? 2. In what respect does Patagonia resemble the British Isles? 3. Describe the interior. 4. Describe the inhabitants. 5. What two causes render the Straits of Magellan dangerous? 6. Describe Cape Horn the Antilles are sugar, molasses, and rum; coffee, cotton, indigo, pepper, ginger, and tobacco. Three-fourths of the population are negroes.

199. POLITICAL RELATIONS OF THE WEST INDIA ISLANDS.—Excepting San Domingo, all the West India Islands belong to European powers.* San Domingo is as large as Scotland. The eastern, or Spanish part, capital *San Domingo*, is properly called Hispaniola; the western, or French part, capital *Port au Prince*, is properly called Hayti. Both are independent republics of blacks. The Spanish possessions are by far the most extensive, and contain the largest population: in them alone slavery still exists. The British possessions comprise the greatest number of islands, and rank second in point of population.

France	has only Martinique and Guadaloupe.
Holland	has three of the Leeward Islands, and Curaçoa.
Denmark	has three of the Virgin Islands (sect. 82).
Sweden	has only St. Bartholomew, one of the Leeward groups.

200. SPANISH ISLANDS.—Cuba, nearly equal to England in size, is the largest and finest of the West Indian Islands; it is greatly coveted by the United States. *Havannah* (pop. 120,000) is its capital. Puerto Rico is beautifully diversified; well watered, and fertile; chief town, *San Juan*. Two of the Virgin Islands belong to Spain; and also the Galapagos group, situated in the line of the equator, west of Ecuador. The

---

198.—1. Into what three groups may the West India Islands be divided? 2. What four islands constitute the Greater Antilles? 3. What three groups constitute the Lesser Antilles? 4. In what two respects do the Bahamas differ from the Antilles? 5. What are the principal productions of the latter? 6. How are the seasons defined in the West Indies? 7. What parts are unhealthy? 8. What straits separate the West India Islands from Florida, Cuba from San Domingo, and San Domingo from Puerto Rico? 9. What island commands the entrance to the Gulf of Mexico? 10. What island commands the mouths of the Orinoco? 11. What three islands are due north of the town of Caraccas, of the Gulf of Maracaibo, and of the Gulf of Darien respectively?

199.—1. Into what two parts is San Domingo divided? 2. Name the capital of each. 3. Name the one cape at the eastern extremity, and the two capes at the western extremity of San Domingo. 4. In what two respects have the Spanish West Indies the pre-eminence? 5. What great social wrong is found only in them? 6. In what respect have the British West Indies the pre-eminence? 7. What two islands belong to France? 8. In what groups do the Dutch and Danish West Indies respectively lie? 9. Name the single island belonging to Sweden.

* In the spring of 1861, Hispaniola, the eastern part of San Domingo, resumed its allegiance to Spain.

Galapagos Islands are said to contain 2000 extinct craters; their shores abound with land and sea turtles, fish, and wild fowl.

201. BRITISH ISLANDS.—Jamaica and Trinidad are by far the largest of the British Islands. Jamaica is nearly as large as Wales. The Blue Mountains, which traverse it in the direction of its length, attain in some places a height of more than 7000 feet. Between them and the north shore, is a succession of gently swelling hills; on the southern side, they present a series of abrupt precipices which render the scenery truly sublime. At a distance of six miles behind the town of *Kingston*, the ground is so elevated that all the garden vegetables of Europe can be grown for its market. Kingston, in which the trade of the island centres, is by far the largest town, the population being upwards of 30,000; but *Spanish Town*, connected with it by railway, is the seat of government. West of Jamaica are the Caymans, three small islands, of which the Grand Cayman is alone inhabited. The inhabitants employ themselves chiefly in piloting ships, and in turtle-fishing. The interior of Trinidad is covered with forests; but much of it remains unexplored. The most remarkable phenomenon is a lake of mineral pitch, situated near the south-western promontory of the island. It is one and a half miles in diameter, and of unknown depth. In the centre it boils up, but along the shore its surface is as hard as coal, and of a greyish colour. Great quantities have been taken away for paying ships' bottoms, but the holes so made are soon filled up again. At a distance of forty miles from this pitch lake are mud volcanoes. Though Trinidad is next in size to Jamaica, its chief town, *Port of Spain* (pop. 12,000), is not next in size to Kingston. That rank is held by *Bridgetown*, capital of Barbadoes, the most densely peopled of all the West India Islands. Most of the Lesser Antilles, and all the Bahamas, belong to Great Britain.

Out of the West Indies the following islands off the coast of America are British possessions:—The Bermudas, east of the United States; the Falkland Isles, east from the Straits of Magellan; and Georgia, south-east from the Falkland Isles. The Bermudas enjoy a uniformly mild and salubrious climate,

---

200.—1. Name the capes at the eastern and western extremities of Cuba. 2. Name the capitals of Cuba and Puerto Rico respectively? 3. Where are the Galapagos Islands? 4. What can be had there in abundance?

to which tremendous hurricanes are the only drawback. They export arrow-root to England, and white freestone to the West Indies. The Falkland Islands resemble those of Shetland in climate and productions. A settlement has been formed upon them, to provide a harbour of refuge and refitment for British ships frequenting the south seas. Georgia is not permanently occupied. Though not more distant from the equator than Yorkshire, it is almost inaccessible on account of snow and ice

OCEANIA.

SUBDIVIDED INTO MALAYSIA, AUSTRALASIA, AND POLYNESIA.

202. **Malaysia, or, East Indian Archipelago.** — The islands of this division are clustered around Borneo, which is three times the size of Great Britain, and the second largest island on the globe (sect. 203). Camphor and pepper are the principal exports. The inhabitants are divided into numerous independent tribes, most of which, particularly those on the west coast, are under Dutch influence. *Labuan*, a small island near the mainland of Borneo, belongs to Britain. All the islands of the East Indian Archipelago are mountainous ; and many of the mountains are volcanoes. Rice is the chief food in the western islands, and sago in the eastern. The inland regions are occupied by barbarians, called Oriental negroes. The coasts are inhabited by Malays, who are partially civilized ; and, as Europeans come most into contact with these, the whole Archipelago has been called Malaysia. The principal groups are the Sunda Isles, the Moluccas, and the Philippines. Of the Sunda Isles, *Sumatra* and *Java* are by far the largest. The latter con-

---

201.—1. Name the capes at the eastern and western extremities of Jamaica. 2. From what country is Trinidad separated by the Gulf of Paria? 3. Describe the configuration of Jamaica. 4. To what do Kingston and Spanish Town respectively owe their importance? 5. Describe the most remarkable phenomenon in Trinidad? 6. In what does Barbadoes surpass all the other islands belonging to Britain? 7. What is the general direction of the Bahamas? 8. What two groups of American Islands, out of the West Indies, belong to Britain? 9. What are the chief exports from the Bermudas? 10. Contrast their climate and productions with those of the Falkland Isles.

tains *Batavia* (pop. 150,000), the capital of all the Dutch possessions in the East Indies (sect. 86). Of the smaller Sunda Isles, *Banca* is by far the most important, on account of its inexhaustible mines of tin, a metal found also in Sumatra. The Moluccas have been called Spice Islands, from the very superior quality of the cloves and nutmegs which they yield. The outline of *Celebes* is remarkably like that of *Gilolo*, the largest of the Spice Islands. Both consist of four large peninsulas, separated by deep gulfs. The Philippines (sect. 108) belong to Spain. All the other islands of Malaysia, with the exception of a few small British and Portuguese settlements, are either in the possession of the Dutch, or under their influence.

AUSTRALASIA.

203. Bird's-eye View of Australia.—Australia is the largest island in the world. Its coasts are for the most part low and sandy, with hilly ranges lying, like those of Africa, at no great distance from the shore, and parallel to it. The interior has now been traversed from south to north, and is everywhere fitted for pasturage. In inter-tropical Australia the heat is excessive, and the hottest season so very moist as to be unhealthy. In extra-tropical Australia the hot season is dry, and the climate extremely healthy. Ophthalmia is the only disease incident to the climate, and that arises, as in Egypt, from the fine dust distributed through the air. Long-continued droughts are the only drawback to the climate of extra-tropical Australia. On this account the rivers are not constant in their flow, but present, during most of the year, sometimes during whole years in succession, a scattered series of waterholes. Many of them, including the largest of them all, the Murray River, diminish, instead of increasing, as they advance towards the sea. Hence none of them are of much service to navigation. Gold, copper

---

202.—1. Why is this group called Malaysia? 2. Mention the size and principal exports of the central island. 3. What three groups cluster round it? 4. Name the four European powers which have settlements in Malaysia. 5. Which two have the most extensive possessions? 6. Where and what is Batavia? 7. Name the largest two islands of the Sunda group. 8. Name the largest of the Moluccas 9. In what respect is Celebes like it? 10. For what spices are the Moluccas specially famous? 11. Name the largest two of the Philippines.

ore, and wool are the chief exports. Sheep require little water, and thrive remarkably well on the tufted grass of the pastures.

204. **Australian Colonies.**—The aborigines are Oriental negroes, few in number, exceedingly degraded, and now rapidly disappearing before the whites. Five settlements have been formed, governing themselves separately according to very liberal constitutions, under the presidency of a governor, who represents the sovereign of Great Britain. They are—

Colony.	Settlement.	Population.	Capital.	Population.
New South Wales, .	1728	400,000	Sydney, . . .	100,000
Western Australia, .	1829	20,000	Perth, . . .	2,000
South Australia, . .	1836	150,000	Adelaide, .	20,000
Victoria, ...	1851	580,000	Melbourne, .	150,000
Queensland, ...	1859	50,000	Brisbane, . .	2,000

The oldest settlement is New South Wales, also called Eastern Australia, a maritime region, separated from the interior by a mountain-chain running north and south, at a distance from the coast of from fifty to a hundred miles. The capital is situated on Port Jackson, northwards of the famous Botany Bay, which was made a penal settlement, when Britain lost her American colonies, and ceased to be so a few years ago, at the urgent request of the colonists. Victoria, also called Australia Felix, formed part of New South Wales till 1851. In that year, gold diggings were discovered in the mountains which form the watershed between the streams flowing northwards to the Murray River, and those flowing southwards directly to the coast. The immigration became thenceforth so great, that in the course of seven years the population increased six-fold. South Australia comprises the lower basin of Murray River, and the whole country around Spencer's Gulf. In it are the Burra-Burra copper mines, the most productive in the world.

203.—1. Describe the coasts of Australia. 2. Describe its rivers. 3. What is the great drawback to its climate ? 4. Why should ophthalmia prevail in Australia? 5. What are the principal exports ? 6. Name the largest gulf in the coast-line of Australia. 7. Name the two capes at its entrance. 8. What straits divide Australia from Van Diemen's Land.

204.—1. Describe the aborigines of Australia. 2. Name the five colonies. 3. Which of them is the oldest ? 4. Which is the most recent ? 5. Which is the most populous ? 6. Which of them has very productive gold diggings ? 7. Which of them has very productive copper mines ? 8. What districts constitute South

205. **VAN DIEMEN'S LAND, OR TASMANIA.**—The shores of Tasmania are bolder than those of Australia, and abound with deep and commodious harbours. Its interior configuration is exceedingly mountainous, the highest ranges being disposed on the east and west of a comparatively low region, which traverses the middle of the island from north to south. In this central hollow are the two principal rivers, viz., the Derwent, flowing southwards, on which is *Hobart Town;* and the Tamar, flowing northwards, on which is *Port Dalrymple.* The climate of Van Diemen's Land is neither so warm nor so dry as that of Australia, on which account it is better adapted to European constitutions, and to the various processes of British husbandry. On the southern shore, the highest mountains are capped with snow during several months of winter, and the frost is sometimes severe; but so rapid is vegetation during the open season, that two crops of potatoes are obtained in one year.

206. **NEW ZEALAND.**—The largest two islands are together somewhat larger than Great Britain and Ireland. The coasts abound with harbours and well-protected bays; the interior is mountainous and thickly wooded; the climate resembles that of Ireland; and the soil yields an abundant return for any labour bestowed upon it. The most important of the native plants is a species of flax, the *leaves* of which yield a fibre twice as strong as that obtained from the stem of the common flax. It has already to a considerable extent supplanted Russian hemp in the manufacture of cordage and canvas. The natives are a noble race, differing but little from Europeans in size and features; even their complexion is sometimes fair, but generally it is brown. Their total number is under 60,000; the great majority inhabit the northern island and chiefly its eastern shore. Seat of government, Auckland.

Provinces.	NORTH ISLAND.	Capitals.
Auckland, . .	from sea to sea, ...	Auckland.
Taranaki, . .	on the west coast, ...	New Plymouth.
Hawke's Bay, .	on the east coast, ...	Napier.
Wellington, .	from sea to sea, ...	Wellington.

Australia? 8. What colony intervenes between New South Wales and South Australia? 9. Whereabouts is Sydney? 19. Of which colonies are Adelaide and Melbourne respectively the capitals?

205.—1. Describe the configuration of Tasmania. 2. Compare its climate with that of Australia. 3. Name the two principal towns. 4. On what rivers do they respectively stand?

Provinces.	South Island.	Capitals.
Nelson,	from sea to sea,	Nelson.
Marlborough,	north-east corner,	Picton.
Canterbury,	from sea to sea,	Christchurch.
Otago,	from sea to sea,	Dunedin.
Southland,	on Fouveaux Straits,	Invercargill.

207. **Papua, or New Guinea.**—The natives of this island are the ugliest race of Oriental negroes, and have still the whole island to themselves. Not only has no European settlement been made, but no European has ever explored the interior. Tortoise shell, nutmegs, and edible bird's nests are brought down to the coast in immense quantities, and sold there to traders at a merely nominal price. All the islands, scattered in the form of an arch from Papua towards New Zealand, are inhabited by oriental negroes, but none of them have yet acquired any importance. The principal are the Admiralty Islands, New Britain, New Ireland, Louisiade, Solomon's Islands, Queen Charlotte's, Archipelago, the New Hebrides, and New Caledonia. It was in Erromanga, one of the New Hebrides, that missionary Williams was murdered. Between New Caledonia and Australia lies the Coral Sea, so called because there is scarcely a league of it without some island or reef of coral.

POLYNESIA.

208. **Bird's-eye View.**—Polynesia comprises all the remaining islands of the Pacific. They resemble each other in climate and productions; and their inhabitants have race, language, and religion in common. The climate and productions are tropical; but the sultriness of the hot season is greatly alleviated by the immense expanse of surrounding water (sect. 25). The inhabitants are most nearly allied to the Malay race, and

---

206.—1. Compare New Zealand with the British Isles in respect of size and climate. 2. Compare New Zealand flax with that of Europe. 3. Compare the New Zealanders with Europeans. 4. Where are most of them to be found? 5. Name the three settlements on the northern island. 6. Name the three in the southern. 7. What straits separate the two islands? 8. Name the most northerly cape in each.

207.—1. Describe the natives of New Guinea. 2. Enumerate the exports. 3. Mention four islands, or groups of islands, the names of which are borrowed from the British Isles. 4. Where was missionary Williams murdered? 5. Where is the Coral Sea?

their many dialects are all akin to the ancient Malay language. Except where the Polynesians have been converted to Christianity, they are polytheists, and in war practise the greatest barbarities, even cannibalism. In external aspect the islands of Polynesia differ greatly from one another, some being exceedingly low and flat, others beautifully diversified by hills, and others quite mountainous. The coral islands belong to the first class, most of them rising only a few feet above the surface of the sea; they are generally small, and but scantily covered with soil, on which account their vegetation is comparatively dwarfish.

209. GROUPS NORTH OF THE EQUATOR.—Due south of Japan are the Bonin Islands, the Ladrones, and the Carolinas. The more northerly of the Bonin Islands have been colonized by the Japanese; the Ladrones belong to Spain; the Carolinas furnish the best sailors in Polynesia. Just within the tropic of Cancer are the Sandwich Islands. The inhabitants, who number about 150,000, have been converted to Christianity by American missionaries; and education has made such progress among them that readers enough are found to support a newspaper. Hawaii, the largest island in the group, is also the largest in Polynesia, measuring nearly 100 miles every way. Among the mountains of the interior, some of which rise to the height of 13,000 feet, are several volcanoes. One of them has the largest crater known. Its diameter measures fifteen miles, and its sides form a sheer descent of 1000 feet. It was in an accidental quarrel with the natives of Hawaii that Captain Cook lost his life.

210. GROUPS SOUTH OF THE EQUATOR.—Traversed by the 20th parallel are the Feejee, Friendly, and Society Islands. The Friendly Islands were so called by Captain Cook, because of the kind treatment he received from their inhabitants. Tonga, the largest, is unusually large for a coral island, measuring 100 miles in circumference. The Society Islands are all

---

208.—1. Into what three classes may the islands of Polynesia be divided? 2. Describe the coral islands. 3. In what three respects do the natives of Polynesia agree? 4. To what race of men are they most nearly allied?

209.—1. What three groups lie due south of Japan? 2. Which of them belongs to a European power? 3. Where are the Sandwich Islands? 4. Mention two important physical facts about Hawaii. 5. Describe the largest crater in it. 6. Mention an important historical fact connected with the same island.

surrounded by a coral reef, within which the water is calm even when there is a tempest outside. The largest is Tahiti (Otaheite), which consists of a mountainous interior, with a belt of level land along the shore. Most of the natives in these three groups have been converted to Christianity by the agents of the London Missionary Society; but Roman Catholicism has been introduced into Tahiti by the French, who exercise a protectorate over the Society Islands. The French have also established their authority in the Marquesas Islands, north of the Society Islands. South-west of Tahiti is Pitcairn's Island, remarkable in connexion with the famous mutiny of the "Bounty."

210.—1. What three groups are traversed by the twentieth parallel? 2. What is their religious condition? 3. To what groups do Tonga and Tahiti respectively belong? 4. Mention a curious physical fact about the Society Islands. 5. In what two groups is French influence paramount? 6. For what is Pitcairn's Island remarkable?

PRINTED BY OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH.

Dr M'Culloch's Educational Works,

PUBLISHED BY

OLIVER AND BOYD, EDINBURGH;

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO., LONDON.

A valuable series of works has been prepared by Dr M'Culloch, formerly Head Master of the Circus-Place School, Edinburgh, now Minister of the West Church, Greenock, for the use of schools where the general mental culture of the pupil, as well as his proficiency in the art of reading, is studiously and systematically aimed at.

They form, collectively, a progressional Series, so constructed and graduated as to conduct the pupil, by regular stages, from the elementary sounds of the language to its highest and most complex forms of speech; and each separate Book is also progressively arranged,—the lessons which are more easily read and understood always taking the lead, and preparing the way for those of greater difficulty.

The subject-matter of the Books is purposely miscellaneous. Yet it is always of a character to excite the interest and enlarge the knowledge of the reader. And with the design of more effectually promoting his mental growth and nurture, the various topics are introduced in an order conformable to that in which the chief faculties of the juvenile mind are usually developed.

That the moral feelings of the pupil may not be without their proper stimulus and nutriment, the lessons are pervaded throughout by the religious and Christian element.

READING-BOOKS FOR SCHOOLS.

FIRST READING-BOOK, 34th Edition, ...	1½d.
SECOND READING-BOOK, 34th Edition, ...	3d.
THIRD READING-BOOK, 35th Edition, ...	10d.
FOURTH READING-BOOK and Synopsis of Spelling, 8th Edition, ...	1s. 6d.
SERIES OF LESSONS in Prose and Verse, 44th Edit.,	2s.
COURSE OF ELEMENTARY READING in Science and Literature, with 39 Woodcuts, 41st Edition, .	3s.

The Publishers confidently invite the attention of Teachers to the New Editions of these Works, in the belief that, after the thorough manner in which they have now been revised and improved by the Author, they will be found in all respects adapted to the present advanced state of Education.

DR M'CULLOCH'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

The **First and Second Reading-Books** consist, as before, of lessons on the elementary sounds of the language; but they have been enlarged for the purpose of introducing additional exercises, and thereby facilitating the acquirement of the first elements of reading.

The **Third Reading-Book** has undergone some changes both in its contents and in their arrangement, in order to render the lessons at once more interesting in themselves and more gradational in their sequence.

The **Fourth Reading-Book** (*only recently published*) supplies a gap, previously existing, between the Third Book and the Series of Lessons. Being intended for the use of the pupil at a stage of his progress when he needs to be exercised chiefly in reading, without having his attention constantly distracted by questions on the import of what he reads, it contains only such lessons as are level to his unaided understanding,—Fables, Tales, Allegories, and other compositions of a character at once interesting and self-interpreting. A Synopsis of Spelling is appended.

The **Series of Lessons** comes next in order; and in the New Edition it has been not only revised and corrected, but to a considerable extent recast. Obsolete lessons have been cancelled; those which are retained have been amended; and new ones have been introduced of a nature and style adapted to the educational requirements of the day. The whole contents, moreover, are so graduated in respect both of expression and of thought as to form an appropriate sequel to the Fourth Book, and a suitable introduction to the Course of Elementary Reading in Science and Literature.

In the New Edition of this last-named work—**the Course**—the changes introduced, for the purpose of bringing it into harmony with the progress of knowledge and the altered conditions of education, are on so extensive a scale that they amount to little short of an entire reconstruction of the work. As before, however, the greater part of the book consists of lessons on Natural History, the Physical Sciences, Geography and Astronomy, and the Christian Religion; though on most, if not all, of these lessons material changes have been made, in order to render them at once more consecutive and more comprehensive. Among the subjects introduced for the first time are a series of lessons on Electricity and the Electric Telegraph, on Language and Literature, and on the Phenomena of Industrial Life (such as Prices, Wages, Strikes, etc.) The Miscellaneous Lessons have been remodelled, so as to supply a greater amount and variety of interesting and agreeable reading. And in the Poetical department, specimens are given, in chronological order, of all our great poets from Spenser to Tennyson, along with examples of the manner in which the same subject is handled by different poets. A Vocabulary of Scientific Terms has been added for the use both of teachers and of pupils.

DR M'CULLOCH'S EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

LESSONS from Dr M'Culloch's First Reading-Book.

Printed with Large Type, in a Series of Ten Sheets, for hanging on the Wall, 1s.; or Mounted on Roller, 1s. 8d.

Dr M'CULLOCH'S Manual of ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

18mo, 180 pages, price 1s. 6d. bound. 20th Edition.

The object of this volume is to furnish a school grammar of the English tongue, sufficiently scientific in its principles and comprehensive in its details to meet the exigencies of the present improved methods of elementary teaching. An attempt is made to exhibit the various branches of the science, not only in their proper order, but in their due and relative proportions; and the work will be found much more full than any other in a department which has of late justly attracted the particular attention of teachers—the derivation of the language. The definitions and rules are expressed with the utmost brevity and simplicity; and the grammatical exercises have been made as copious and varied as was compatible with the restricted limits of a cheap school-book.

PREFIXES and AFFIXES of the English Language.

18mo, price 2d. in stiff wrapper. New Edition.

This little work is intended to initiate youth into the rudiments of etymology, and is chiefly extracted from Dr M'Culloch's Manual of English Grammar.

In all the books of Dr M'Culloch's series, the important object of exercising the juvenile mind by means of lessons on useful and interesting subjects is steadily kept in view. Directions are given relative to the mode of teaching, as well as tables and lists calculated to assist in the process of instruction. On this point the *Spectator* newspaper, when reviewing the series, remarked:—"In recommending these books, it must not be conceived that we recommend them as likely to save trouble to the teacher, or to operate by witchcraft on the pupil. At their first introduction they will require some care on the part of the master, as well as the exercise of some patience, to enable the pupils to profit by the lessons. But this once done, their foundation is sound, and their progress sure. And let both parents and teachers bear in mind that these are the only means to acquire real knowledge."

The leading reviews and journals throughout the country have spoken of Dr M'Culloch's Class-books in the highest terms.

PUBLISHED BY OLIVER AND BOYD.

HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE;

With an OUTLINE of the ORIGIN and GROWTH of the ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Illustrated by EXTRACTS. For the Use of Schools and of Private Students. By WILLIAM SPALDING, A.M., Professor of Logic, Rhetoric, and Metaphysics, in the University of St Andrews. 12mo, 418 pages, 3s 6d. bound. 8th Edition.

The series of Illustrative Extracts is as full as it was found possible to make it; and it is ample enough to throw much light on the narrative and observations furnished by the text. The intention was that every specimen should be large enough to convey a notion, not altogether inadequate, of its author's manner both in thought and in style. The history of the Origin and Growth of the English Language should be familiar to every one who would understand thoroughly the history of English literature. A knowledge of it is yet more valuable to all who desire to gain an exact mastery of the science of English Grammar. The description given in this work of the principal steps by which our native tongue was formed, illustrates, almost in every page, some characteristic fact in our literary history, or some distinctive feature in our ordinary speech.

Spectator.—"A compilation and text-book of a very superior kind. . . . Mr Spalding has brought to his survey not only a knowledge of our history and literature, but original reflection, a comprehensive mind, and an elevation of tone, which impart interest to his account, as well as soundness to his decision. The volume is the best introduction to the subject we have met with."

Athenæum.—"Mr Spalding's critical remarks are discriminating, impartial, judicious, and always well put."

Sessional, Normal, and Parochial School-Books.

ETYMOLOGICAL GUIDE.

18mo, 234 pages, price 2s. 6d. bound. 6th Edition.

This is a collection, alphabetically arranged, of the principal roots, affixes, and prefixes, with their derivatives and compounds.

OLD TESTAMENT BIOGRAPHY.

Containing notices of the chief persons in Holy Scripture, in the form of Questions, with references to Scripture for the Answers. 18mo, 69 pages, price 6d. in stiff wrapper. Stereotype Edition.

NEW TESTAMENT BIOGRAPHY.

On the same Plan. 18mo, 50 pages, price 6d. in stiff wrapper. Stereotype Edition.

Latin and Greek Class-Books,

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION: The Construction of Clauses, with Illustrations from Cicero and Cæsar; a Vocabulary containing an Explanation of every word in the Text; and an Index Verborum. By JOHN MASSIE, A.M. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound.

The Composition gives the different forms of Subject and Predicate in the English, with the corresponding forms in the Latin,—furnishes examples from Cicero and Cæsar,—supplies copious lists of Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives entering into the formation of the various kinds of Subject and Predicate,—treats of Direct and Indirect Narration, Direct and Indirect Questions, the construction of Temporal, Illative, Causal, Conditional, and Final Particles, etc., etc.

The Work is intended to follow the "Grammatical Exercises."

Observer.—"This work will be found most valuable to students who desire to become acquainted with the principles which govern the 'construction' of Latin sentences. The rules are laid down by the author with admirable clearness, and in selecting his illustrations the works of Cicero and Cæsar have been preferred. This has been wisely done, as in writing on Latin composition now especially for students, it is necessary to have in view some standard of style, leaving exceptional forms to be mastered by the student when advanced to the criticism of the language. The work includes a copious vocabulary, and it will be found a valuable aid in surmounting the difficulties at first experienced by students in the composition of Latin prose."

Educational Times.—"An excellent introduction to that very difficult attainment, the power of writing good Latin prose."

Morning Journal.—"The principles of Latin composition are so admirably arranged, the examples are so thoroughly applicable to the rules which they are to illustrate, and the subject is treated so plainly and so copiously, that it would be difficult to find a work more adapted to the purpose which it is intended to serve."

MACGOWAN'S LESSONS IN LATIN READING. *In Two Parts.* Part I., *Corrected and Improved* by H. FRASER HALLE, LL.D., late Classical Master at Chudleigh Endowed Grammar School. 2s. bound. 16th Edition. Part II., 3s. bound. 6th Edition.

The two Courses furnish a complete Latin library of reading, grammar, and composition for beginners. Each volume contains a complete dictionary adapted to itself.

MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX, with an English and Latin Vocabulary and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by the Rev. ALEX. STEWART, LL.D. 3s. bound. 13th Edition.

STEWART'S CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Notes, Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text, and Index of Proper Names. 18mo, 372 pages, price 3s. bound. 27th Edition.

NEILSON'S EUTROPIUS ET AURELIUS VICTOR, with a Vocabulary explaining every word. 2s. bound. 11th Edition.

Remodelled and greatly Enlarged, with Exercises on the proposed Decimal Coinage.

INGRAM'S PRINCIPLES OF ARITHMETIC

and their Application to Business explained in a Popular Manner, and clearly Illustrated by Simple Rules and Numerous Examples. For the Use of Schools. 42d Edition. By ALEXANDER TROTTER, of the Scottish Institute. 18mo, 150 pages, 1s. bound.

The Elementary Rules are explained in concise and intelligent language, adapted to the capacity of youth; and the various exercises are so arranged—commencing with the most simple, and increasing in difficulty by imperceptible degrees—that no obstruction to the progress of the pupil can possibly be apprehended. *Each rule is followed by an example wrought out at length,* and is illustrated by a great variety of practical questions applicable to business.

The present edition has been remodelled and subjected to a careful revision,—the exercises in the Simple and Compound Rules have been rearranged and extended, Fractional Arithmetic has been more fully treated, the exercises in the higher branches of the science have been greatly increased, and a large collection of Miscellaneous Questions has been given: the introduction of a Decimal Coinage into this country having been for some time under the consideration of Government, several pages have been devoted to that system which is most likely to be preferred. A larger and more distinct type has been adopted, without increasing the price of the work, and the utmost care has been taken to secure perfect accuracy.

KEY to the IMPROVED EDITION, 2s. 6d.

◆

HOW TO TRAIN YOUNG EYES and EARS,

Being a Manual of Object Lessons for Parents and Teachers. By MARY ANNE ROSS, Mistress of the Church of Scotland Normal Infant School, Edinburgh. 12mo, 139 pages, 1s. 6d. bound.

Edinburgh: OLIVER AND BOYD.
London: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

Latin and Greek Class-Books,

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION: The Construction of Clauses, with Illustrations from Cicero and Cæsar; a Vocabulary containing an Explanation of every word in the Text; and an Index Verborum. By JOHN MASSIE, A.M. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound.

The Composition gives the different forms of Subject and Predicate in the English, with the corresponding forms in the Latin,—furnishes examples from Cicero and Cæsar,—supplies copious lists of Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives entering into the formation of the various kinds of Subject and Predicate,—treats of Direct and Indirect Narration, Direct and Indirect Questions, the construction of Temporal, Illative, Causal, Conditional, and Final Particles, etc., etc.

The Work is intended to follow the "Grammatical Exercises."

Observer.—"This work will be found most valuable to students who desire to become acquainted with the principles which govern the 'construction' of Latin sentences. The rules are laid down by the author with admirable clearness, and in selecting his illustrations the works of Cicero and Cæsar have been preferred. This has been wisely done, as in writing on Latin composition now especially for students, it is necessary to have in view some standard of style, leaving exceptional forms to be mastered by the student when advanced to the criticism of the language. The work includes a copious vocabulary, and it will be found a valuable aid in surmounting the difficulties at first experienced by students in the composition of Latin prose."

Educational Times.—"An excellent introduction to that very difficult attainment, the power of writing good Latin prose."

Morning Journal.—"The principles of Latin composition are so admirably arranged, the examples are so thoroughly applicable to the rules which they are to illustrate, and the subject is treated so plainly and so copiously, that it would be difficult to find a work more adapted to the purpose which it is intended to serve."

MACGOWAN'S LESSONS IN LATIN READING. *In Two Parts.* Part I., *Corrected and Improved* by H. FRASER HALLE, LL.D., late Classical Master at Chudleigh Endowed Grammar School. 2s. bound. 16th Edition. Part II., 3s. bound. 6th Edition.

The two Courses furnish a complete Latin library of reading, grammar, and composition for beginners. Each volume contains a complete dictionary adapted to itself.

MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX, with an English and Latin Vocabulary and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by the Rev. ALEX. STEWART, LL.D. 3s. bound. 13th Edition.

STEWART'S CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Notes, Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text, and Index of Proper Names. 18mo, 372 pages, price 3s. bound. 27th Edition.

NEILSON'S EUTROPIUS ET AURELIUS VICTOR, with a Vocabulary explaining every word. 2s. bound. 11th Edition.

Remodelled and greatly Enlarged, with Exercises on the proposed Decimal Coinage.

INGRAM'S PRINCIPLES OF ARITHMETIC

and their Application to Business explained in a Popular Manner, and clearly Illustrated by Simple Rules and Numerous Examples. For the Use of Schools. 42d Edition. By Alexander Trotter, of the Scottish Institute. 18mo, 150 pages, 1s. bound.

The Elementary Rules are explained in concise and intelligent language, adapted to the capacity of youth; and the various exercises are so arranged—commencing with the most simple, and increasing in difficulty by imperceptible degrees—that no obstruction to the progress of the pupil can possibly be apprehended. *Each rule is followed by an example wrought out at length,* and is illustrated by a great variety of practical questions applicable to business.

The present edition has been remodelled and subjected to a careful revision,—the exercises in the Simple and Compound Rules have been rearranged and extended, Fractional Arithmetic has been more fully treated, the exercises in the higher branches of the science have been greatly increased, and a large collection of Miscellaneous Questions has been given: the introduction of a Decimal Coinage into this country having been for some time under the consideration of Government, several pages have been devoted to that system which is most likely to be preferred. A larger and more distinct type has been adopted, without increasing the price of the work, and the utmost care has been taken to secure perfect accuracy.

KEY to the Improved Edition, 2s. 6d.

◆

HOW TO TRAIN YOUNG EYES and EARS,

Being a Manual of Object Lessons for Parents and Teachers. By Mary Anne Ross, Mistress of the Church of Scotland Normal Infant School, Edinburgh. 12mo, 139 pages, 1s. 6d. bound.

Edinburgh: Oliver and Boyd.
London: Simpkin, Marshall, and Co.

Latin and Greek Class-Books,

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION: The Construction of Clauses, with Illustrations from Cicero and Cæsar; a Vocabulary containing an Explanation of every word in the Text; and an Index Verborum. By JOHN MASSIE, A.M. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound.

The Composition gives the different forms of Subject and Predicate in the English, with the corresponding forms in the Latin,—furnishes examples from Cicero and Cæsar,—supplies copious lists of Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives entering into the formation of the various kinds of Subject and Predicate,—treats of Direct and Indirect Narration, Direct and Indirect Questions, the construction of Temporal, Illative, Causal, Conditional, and Final Particles, etc., etc.

The Work is intended to follow the "Grammatical Exercises."

Observer.—"This work will be found most valuable to students who desire to become acquainted with the principles which govern the 'construction' of Latin sentences. The rules are laid down by the author with admirable clearness, and in selecting his illustrations the works of Cicero and Cæsar have been preferred. This has been wisely done, as in writing on Latin composition now especially for students, it is necessary to have in view some standard of style, leaving exceptional forms to be mastered by the student when advanced to the criticism of the language. The work includes a copious vocabulary, and it will be found a valuable aid in surmounting the difficulties at first experienced by students in the composition of Latin prose."

Educational Times.—"An excellent introduction to that very difficult attainment, the power of writing good Latin prose."

Morning Journal.—"The principles of Latin composition are so admirably arranged, the examples are so thoroughly applicable to the rules which they are to illustrate, and the subject is treated so plainly and so copiously, that it would be difficult to find a work more adapted to the purpose which it is intended to serve."

MACGOWAN'S LESSONS IN LATIN READING. *In Two Parts.* Part I., *Corrected and Improved* by H. FRASER HALLE, LL.D., late Classical Master at Chudleigh Endowed Grammar School. 2s. bound. 16th Edition. Part II., 3s. bound. 6th Edition.

The two Courses furnish a complete Latin library of reading, grammar, and composition for beginners. Each volume contains a complete dictionary adapted to itself.

MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX, with an English and Latin Vocabulary and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by the Rev. ALEX. STEWART, LL.D. 3s. bound. 13th Edition.

STEWART'S CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Notes, Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text, and Index of Proper Names. 18mo, 372 pages, price 3s. bound. 27th Edition.

NEILSON'S EUTROPIUS ET AURELIUS VICTOR, with a Vocabulary explaining every word. 2s. bound. 11th Edition.

Remodelled and greatly Enlarged, with Exercises on the proposed Decimal Coinage.

INGRAM'S PRINCIPLES OF ARITHMETIC

and their Application to Business explained in a Popular Manner, and clearly Illustrated by Simple Rules and Numerous Examples. For the Use of Schools. 42d Edition. By Alexander Trotter, of the Scottish Institute. 18mo, 150 pages, 1s. bound.

The Elementary Rules are explained in concise and intelligent language, adapted to the capacity of youth; and the various exercises are so arranged—commencing with the most simple, and increasing in difficulty by imperceptible degrees—that no obstruction to the progress of the pupil can possibly be apprehended. *Each rule is followed by an example wrought out at length,* and is illustrated by a great variety of practical questions applicable to business.

The present edition has been remodelled and subjected to a careful revision,—the exercises in the Simple and Compound Rules have been rearranged and extended, Fractional Arithmetic has been more fully treated, the exercises in the higher branches of the science have been greatly increased, and a large collection of Miscellaneous Questions has been given: the introduction of a Decimal Coinage into this country having been for some time under the consideration of Government, several pages have been devoted to that system which is most likely to be preferred. A larger and more distinct type has been adopted, without increasing the price of the work, and the utmost care has been taken to secure perfect accuracy.

KEY to the Improved Edition, 2s. 6d.

◆

HOW TO TRAIN YOUNG EYES and EARS,

Being a Manual of Object Lessons for Parents and Teachers. By Mary Anne Ross, Mistress of the Church of Scotland Normal Infant School, Edinburgh. 12mo, 139 pages, 1s. 6d. bound.

Edinburgh: Oliver and Boyd.
London: Simpkin, Marshall, and Co.

Latin and Greek Class-Books,

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION: The Construction of Clauses, with Illustrations from Cicero and Cæsar; a Vocabulary containing an Explanation of every word in the Text; and an Index Verborum. By JOHN MASSIE, A.M. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound.

The Composition gives the different forms of Subject and Predicate in the English, with the corresponding forms in the Latin,—furnishes examples from Cicero and Cæsar,—supplies copious lists of Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives entering into the formation of the various kinds of Subject and Predicate,—treats of Direct and Indirect Narration, Direct and Indirect Questions, the construction of Temporal, Illative, Causal, Conditional, and Final Particles, etc., etc.

The Work is intended to follow the "Grammatical Exercises."

Observer.—"This work will be found most valuable to students who desire to become acquainted with the principles which govern the 'construction' of Latin sentences. The rules are laid down by the author with admirable clearness, and in selecting his illustrations the works of Cicero and Cæsar have been preferred. This has been wisely done, as in writing on Latin composition now especially for students, it is necessary to have in view some standard of style, leaving exceptional forms to be mastered by the student when advanced to the criticism of the language. The work includes a copious vocabulary, and it will be found a valuable aid in surmounting the difficulties at first experienced by students in the composition of Latin prose."

Educational Times.—"An excellent introduction to that very difficult attainment, the power of writing good Latin prose."

Morning Journal.—"The principles of Latin composition are so admirably arranged, the examples are so thoroughly applicable to the rules which they are to illustrate, and the subject is treated so plainly and so copiously, that it would be difficult to find a work more adapted to the purpose which it is intended to serve."

MACGOWAN'S LESSONS IN LATIN READING. *In Two Parts.* Part I., *Corrected and Improved* by H. FRASER HALLE, LL.D., late Classical Master at Chudleigh Endowed Grammar School. 2s. bound. 16th Edition. Part II., 3s. bound. 6th Edition.

The two Courses furnish a complete Latin library of reading, grammar, and composition for beginners. Each volume contains a complete dictionary adapted to itself.

MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX, with an English and Latin Vocabulary and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by the Rev. ALEX. STEWART, LL.D. 3s. bound. 13th Edition.

STEWART'S CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Notes, Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text, and Index of Proper Names. 18mo, 372 pages, price 3s. bound. 27th Edition.

NEILSON'S EUTROPIUS ET AURELIUS VICTOR, with a Vocabulary explaining every word. 2s. bound. 11th Edition.

Remodelled and greatly Enlarged, with Exercises on the proposed Decimal Coinage.

INGRAM'S PRINCIPLES OF ARITHMETIC

and their Application to Business explained in a Popular Manner, and clearly Illustrated by Simple Rules and Numerous Examples. For the Use of Schools. 42d Edition. By ALEXANDER TROTTER, of the Scottish Institute. 18mo, 150 pages, 1s. bound.

The Elementary Rules are explained in concise and intelligent language, adapted to the capacity of youth; and the various exercises are so arranged—commencing with the most simple, and increasing in difficulty by imperceptible degrees—that no obstruction to the progress of the pupil can possibly be apprehended. *Each rule is followed by an example wrought out at length*, and is illustrated by a great variety of practical questions applicable to business.

The present edition has been remodelled and subjected to a careful revision,—the exercises in the Simple and Compound Rules have been rearranged and extended, Fractional Arithmetic has been more fully treated, the exercises in the higher branches of the science have been greatly increased, and a large collection of Miscellaneous Questions has been given: the introduction of a Decimal Coinage into this country having been for some time under the consideration of Government, several pages have been devoted to that system which is most likely to be preferred. A larger and more distinct type has been adopted, without increasing the price of the work, and the utmost care has been taken to secure perfect accuracy.

KEY to the IMPROVED EDITION, 2s. 6d.

◆

HOW TO TRAIN YOUNG EYES and EARS,

Being a Manual of Object Lessons for Parents and Teachers. By MARY ANNE ROSS, Mistress of the Church of Scotland Normal Infant School, Edinburgh. 12mo, 139 pages, 1s. 6d. bound.

Edinburgh: OLIVER AND BOYD.
London: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL. AND CO.

Latin and Greek Class-Books,

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION: The Construction of Clauses, with Illustrations from Cicero and Cæsar; a Vocabulary containing an Explanation of every word in the Text; and an Index Verborum. By John Massie, A.M. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. bound.

The Composition gives the different forms of Subject and Predicate in the English, with the corresponding forms in the Latin,—furnishes examples from Cicero and Cæsar,—supplies copious lists of Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives entering into the formation of the various kinds of Subject and Predicate,—treats of Direct and Indirect Narration, Direct and Indirect Questions, the construction of Temporal, Illative, Causal, Conditional, and Final Particles, etc., etc.

The Work is intended to follow the "Grammatical Exercises."

Observer.—"This work will be found most valuable to students who desire to become acquainted with the principles which govern the 'construction' of Latin sentences. The rules are laid down by the author with admirable clearness, and in selecting his illustrations the works of Cicero and Cæsar have been preferred. This has been wisely done, as in writing on Latin composition now especially for students, it is necessary to have in view some standard of style, leaving exceptional forms to be mastered by the student when advanced to the criticism of the language. The work includes a copious vocabulary, and it will be found a valuable aid in surmounting the difficulties at first experienced by students in the composition of Latin prose."

Educational Times.—"An excellent introduction to that very difficult attainment, the power of writing good Latin prose."

Morning Journal.—"The principles of Latin composition are so admirably arranged, the examples are so thoroughly applicable to the rules which they are to illustrate, and the subject is treated so plainly and so copiously, that it would be difficult to find a work more adapted to the purpose which it is intended to serve."

MACGOWAN'S LESSONS IN LATIN READING. *In Two Parts.* Part I., *Corrected and Improved* by H. Fraser Halle, LL.D., late Classical Master at Chudleigh Endowed Grammar School. 2s. bound. 16th Edition. Part II., 3s. bound. 6th Edition.

The two Courses furnish a complete Latin library of reading, grammar, and composition for beginners. Each volume contains a complete dictionary adapted to itself.

MAIR'S INTRODUCTION TO LATIN SYNTAX, with an English and Latin Vocabulary and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by the Rev. Alex. Stewart, LL.D. 3s. bound. 13th Edition.

STEWART'S CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Notes, Vocabulary explaining every word in the Text, and Index of Proper Names. 18mo, 372 pages, price 3s. bound. 27th Edition.

NEILSON'S EUTROPIUS ET AURELIUS VICTOR, with a Vocabulary explaining every word. 2s. bound. 11th Edition.

Remodelled and greatly Enlarged, with Exercises on the proposed Decimal Coinage.

INGRAM'S PRINCIPLES OF ARITHMETIC and their Application to Business explained in a Popular Manner, and clearly Illustrated by Simple Rules and Numerous Examples. For the Use of Schools. 42d Edition. By ALEXANDER TROTTER, of the Scottish Institute. 18mo, 150 pages, 1s. bound.

The Elementary Rules are explained in concise and intelligent language, adapted to the capacity of youth; and the various exercises are so arranged—commencing with the most simple, and increasing in difficulty by imperceptible degrees—that no obstruction to the progress of the pupil can possibly be apprehended. *Each rule is followed by an example wrought out at length,* and is illustrated by a great variety of practical questions applicable to business.

The present edition has been remodelled and subjected to a careful revision,—the exercises in the Simple and Compound Rules have been rearranged and extended, Fractional Arithmetic has been more fully treated, the exercises in the higher branches of the science have been greatly increased, and a large collection of Miscellaneous Questions has been given: the introduction of a Decimal Coinage into this country having been for some time under the consideration of Government, several pages have been devoted to that system which is most likely to be preferred. A larger and more distinct type has been adopted, without increasing the price of the work, and the utmost care has been taken to secure perfect accuracy.

KEY to the IMPROVED EDITION, 2s. 6d.

◆

HOW TO TRAIN YOUNG EYES and EARS, Being a Manual of Object Lessons for Parents and Teachers. By MARY ANNE ROSS, Mistress of the Church of Scotland Normal Infant School, Edinburgh. 12mo, 139 pages, 1s. 6d. bound.

Edinburgh: OLIVER AND BOYD.
London: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL. AND CO.

French Class-Books,

By JULES CARON, F.E.I.S., French Teacher, Edinburgh.

I.

FIRST FRENCH CLASS-BOOK; or, A Practical and Easy Method of learning the FRENCH LANGUAGE, consisting of a Series of FRENCH and ENGLISH EXERCISES, progressively and grammatically arranged. 3d Edition. Fcap 8vo, 104 pages, 1s. cloth.—The KEY, 1s.

This work follows the natural mode in which a child learns to speak its own language, by repeating the same words and phrases in a great variety of forms until the pupil becomes familiar with their use.

II.

FIRST FRENCH READING-BOOK; being Easy and Interesting Lessons, progressively arranged, with a Copious Vocabulary of the Words and Idioms contained in the Text. 2d Edition. Fcap 8vo, 96 pages, 1s. cloth.

The compilers of works for the practical study of the French tongue seem too often to have overlooked the wide difference which exists between the language of books and the language of conversation. Their compilations, accordingly, have generally exhibited only one form of the language. It is the object of this work to make the pupil master of both forms.

Athenæum.—"Well adapted for familiarizing the reader with correct models of French, as it is now written and spoken."

III.

PRINCIPLES OF FRENCH GRAMMAR, with numerous Exercises. For the Use of Schools and Private Students. Fcap 8vo, 208 pages, 2s. bound. 9th Edition. The KEY, 2s.

Spectator.—"May be recommended for clearness of exposition, gradual progression, and a distinct exhibition to the mind through the eye by means of typographical display, the last an important point where the subject admits of it."

Edinburgh: OLIVER AND BOYD.
London: SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND Co.

Published by Oliver and Boyd.

HOMER'S ILIAD—PURE GREEK. Edited by the Rev. W. Veitch, Author of "Greek Verbs, Irregular and Defective," etc. 12mo, **Reduced to 3s. 6d.** bound.

Mr Veitch, the editor of this work, is one of the most profound Greek scholars now living. He has adopted the text of Bekker, collating it with other approved Editions. The work is carefully printed on a clear type, and is accompanied by a brief *Index Nominum.*

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS, BOOKS I. and II. With a Vocabulary explaining every word and the more difficult passages in the Text. By James Fergusson, M.D., Rector of the West End Academy, Aberdeen. 12mo, price 2s. 6d. bound. 7th Edition.

HOMER'S ILIAD, BOOKS I., VI., XX., and XXIV. From Bekker's Text as revised by Mr Veitch. With a Vocabulary explaining every word and the more difficult passages in the Text. By Dr Fergusson. 12mo, price 3s. 6d. 3d Edition.

GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES ON THE MOODS, TENSES, AND SYNTAX OF ATTIC GREEK. With a Vocabulary explaining every Word in the Text. By Dr Fergusson. On the plan of Professor Ferguson's Latin "Grammatical Exercises." 12mo, 3s. 6d. bound. 2d Edition.—Key to Ditto, 3s. 6d.

*** *This work is intended to follow the Greek Rudiments.*

DUNCAN'S GREEK TESTAMENT, Large Type. 12mo, 440 pages, **Reduced to 3s. 6d.** bound.

DR HUNTER'S CLASSICS.

1. **HUNTER'S RUDDIMAN'S RUDIMENTS.** 12mo, price 1s. 6d. bound. 17th Edition.
2. **HUNTER'S SALLUST,** with Explanatory Foot-Notes and Translations of the more difficult Passages. 18mo, **Reduced to 1s. 6d.** bound. 8th Edition.
3. **HUNTER'S VIRGIL,** with Notes and other Illustrations. 18mo, **Reduced to 2s. 6d.** bound. 12th Edition.
4. **HUNTER'S HORACE,** with Illustrative Notes. 18mo, **Reduced to 2s.** bound. 9th Edition.
5. **HUNTER'S LIVY,** Books XXI. to XXV., with Notes and Index. 12mo, price 4s. bound. 15th Edition.